Portuguese Grammar

**A complete, concise and practical reference
for beginners to advanced students**

New Edition

Sonia Celegatti Althoff

illustrated by Felipe Massafera

This book is dedicated to my husband Hermann
and to my daughter Monika.

PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR

A complete, concise and practical reference
for beginners to advanced students

Sonia Celegatti Althoff

illustrated by Felipe Massafera

New Edition

www.sonia-portuguese.com

Contents

Acknowledgements

Preface

Portuguese Grammar is the result of my work and experience over 18 years as a private tutor. As a Brazilian native speaker and teacher, I focus on Brazilian Portuguese, however, this book can also be useful for those who are learning European Portuguese.

Portuguese Grammar is a self-study grammar book, written for use without a teacher. It is intended for students who are learning Portuguese as a second language and need a complete, clear, simple and practical grammar handbook for reference.

Portuguese Grammar will be useful for beginners, for whom it provides a foundation, advanced students who just want to brush up their Portuguese and teachers as a reliable reference and additional course material.

Portuguese Grammar is divided into two parts. It is two books in one:

Part I covers all the essential aspects of Portuguese grammar and it contains a list of often confused and misused words, an invaluable reference for all students of Portuguese.

Part II covers all the essential aspects of Portuguese verbs. It is divided into four chapters. The first chapter presents an introduction to Portuguese verbs; the second chapter presents Portuguese tenses in more detail; the third chapter presents tables of regular and irregular verbs conjugated in all tenses and the fourth chapter presents a list of approximately 850 Portuguese verbs, sorted into groups according to their special characteristics.

Portuguese Grammar presents a simple description of the language focusing on current usage. All topics are organized in grammatical categories and into short, easy-to-read sections, so it can be used selectively and flexibly according to need. Each topic focuses on a particular point of grammar, which is illustrated with clear and simple sentences used in everyday conversation between Brazilians. A broad and detailed table of contents provides quick access to those points you need often or find difficult.

Portuguese Grammar is a valuable tool to help you understand how the Portuguese language is structured.
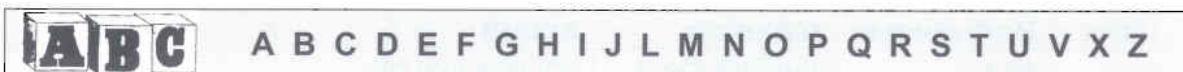
My hope is that everyone who uses this book will enjoy it and take pleasure in speaking Portuguese with confidence and ease.

Sonia Celegatti Althoff

PART I - PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1. The Portuguese alphabet

A B C D E F G H I J L M N O P Q R S T U V X Z

The Portuguese alphabet consists of **23 letters** (**5 vowels** (a, e, i, o, u) and **18 consonants** (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z). The letters **k**, **w** and **y** do not belong to the Portuguese alphabet, but they can be used in names or with international terms. e.g. **Wagner, Wilson, Yara, kg, km,** etc.

Remarks:

- It is important to know how to pronounce the alphabet, as sometimes you have to spell your name or ask someone to spell something for you.
- Pronunciation of the alphabet in Portuguese: á, bê, cê, dê, ê, éfi, gê, agá, i, jóta, éli, êmi, êni, ó, pê, kê, érri, éssi, tê, u, vê, xis, zê and cá, dábliu, ípsilon.
- Letters alone are masculine and as such **o** should be used to denote **the** (e.g. **o** A, **o** B, **o** C, etc.), but if they are preceded by the word *letra* (letter) which is feminine in Portuguese, **a** should be used to denote **the** (e.g. **a letra** A, **a letra** B, **a letra** C, etc.)

1.2. Accents and graphic signs

Familiarize yourself with accents and graphic signs used in Portuguese because they help you pronounce words correctly by indicating which syllable is stressed, whether the pronunciation is open, closed or has a nasal sound, etc.

´	**Acute** indicates that the pronunciation is open as in *café* (coffee), *avó* (grandmother) and *chá* (tea).
^	**Circumflex** indicates that the pronunciation is closed as in *você* (you), *avô* (grandfather) and *lâmpada* (lamp).
~	**Tilde** indicates a nasal sound as in *mão* (hand) and *limões* (lemons).
¨	**Two dots** indicate that **u** is pronounced as in *tranqüilo* (quiet).
`	**Grave** indicates a contraction of the preposition **a** and the definite article *a* (a + a = à) (to).
'	**Apostrophe** indicates the suppression of one vowel as in à *prova d'água* (waterproof). Apostrophe is normally used only in connection with the word *água* (water). e.g. um copo **d'água** = um copo **de água** (a glass of water).
-	**Hyphen** is normally used to link compound words as in *guarda-chuva* (umbrella), to link verbs and pronouns as in *sente-se* (sit down), to link verbs and objects as in *encontrei-o* (I met him) and also to divide any word at the end of the line due to lack of space.

1.3. Pronunciation guide

Below you will find all the sounds found in Portuguese. The comparison with English words should help you pronounce the words correctly, but note that not every sound can be reproduced perfectly in written form.

letter	Portuguese	meaning	sound	English
A	aluno	pupil/student	sounds like [a]	father
	alemã	German	nasal sound	
B	bala	candy/sweet	sounds like [b]	bay
C	casa	house	**ca/co/cu** sounds like [k]	key
	cedo	early	**ce/ci** sounds like [s]	city
Ç	moça	young woman	**ça/ço/çu** sounds like [s]	city
CH	cheque	check	sounds like [sh]	she
D	data	date	sounds like [d]	day
E	letra, você	letter, you	sounds like [e]	them
	leite	milk	sounds like [e] or [ee] at the end, if unstressed	them or cheese
	festa, café	party, coffee	sounds like [e]	bed
F	faca	knife	sounds like [f]	for
G	gato	cat	**ga/go/gu** sounds like [g]	get
	gelo	ice	**ge/gi** sounds like [g]	beige
GU	água	water	**gua/guo** sounds like [gw]	Nicaragua
	português	Portuguese	**gue/gui** sounds like [g]	get
	lingüiça	sausage	**güe/güi** sounds like [gw]	Nicaragua
H	hotel	hotel	h is always silent, except for borrowed words such as hall, hobby, etc.	
I	camisa	shirt	sounds like [ea]	meat
J	jornal	newspaper	sounds like [g]	beige
L	laranja	orange	**la/le/li/lo/lu** sounds like [l]	like
	Brasil	Brazil	**al/el/il/ol/ul** sounds like [w]	few
LH	trabalho	work	sounds like [ll]	million
M	mapa	map	sounds like [m]	more
	bom	good	sounds between **m** and **n**, similar to the French word *bon*	
N	nada	nothing	sounds like [n]	no
	conta	bill	sounds like [n]	contract
NH	amanhã	tomorrow	sounds like [ng], similar to the French words *Avignon* and *champagne*	
O	bonito, avô	nice/pretty, grandfather	sounds like [o]	know

18

letter	Portuguese	meaning	sound	English
O	livro	book	sounds like [o] or [oo] at the end, if unstressed	know or boo
	moda, avó	fashion, grandmother	sounds like [aw]	law
P	pato	duck	sounds like [p]	pie
Q	quase	almost	qua/quo sounds like [kw]	quick
	aqui	here	que/qui sounds like [k]	key
	cinqüenta	fifty	qüe/qüi sounds like [kw]	quick
R	recibo	receipt	similar to [h] sound	holiday
	honra	honor	similar to [h] sound, if preceded by n	holiday
	carta	letter	sounds like [r]	morning or "jour"
	caro	expensive	similar to [r] sound	Mary
RR	carro	car	similar to [h] sound	holiday
S	sopa	soup	at the beginning, sounds like [s]	sea
	cansado	tired	if preceded by l/n/r, sounds like [s]	sea
	inglês	English	sounds like [s]	must
	casa	house	between vowels, sounds like [z]	zero
SC	piscina	swimming pool	sce/sci sounds like [s]	sea
SÇ	desça	go down	sça/sço sounds like [s]	sea
SS	assado	roasted/baked	sounds like [s]	sea
T	tomate	tomato	sounds like [t]	top
U	uva	grape	sounds like [oo]	boo
V	você	you	sounds like [v]	verb
X	México	Mexico	sounds like [sh]	she
	caixa	box/cashier	after ai/ei sounds like [sh]	she
	táxi	taxi	sounds like [ks]	taxi
	próximo	next	sounds like [s]	city
	excelente	excellent	exce/exci sounds like [s]	city
	texto	text	excl/exp/ext sounds like [s]	must
	exame	exam	exa/exe/exi/exo/exu sounds like [z]	zero
Z	zero	zero	before a vowel sounds like [z]	zero
	feliz, felizmente	happy, fortunately	after a vowel or before a consonant sounds like [s]	must

Remark: The letter x has several different pronunciations.

1.4. Nasal sounds

Nasal sounds are difficult for most students to reproduce. Try to pronounce the words without thinking too much about it. This pronunciation comes naturally and it is better when you don't try too hard to imitate the nasal sound.

nasal sound	Portuguese	English
ã ãe ão	irmã, mãe, pão	sister, mother, bread
ãi õe ui	cãibra, limões, muito	cramp, lemons, very

Remark: Any vowel followed by **m** (am, em, im, om, um) or **n** (an, en, in, on, un) may have a slight nasal sound. e.g. b**om** (good), b**an**co (bank).

1.5. Combination of vowels

Combination of vowels means two or three vowels, which come together.

vowels	Portuguese	English
ae ai ao au	Mor**ae**s, p**ai**, **ao**, **au**la	surname, father, to, class
ea ei éi	ár**ea**, l**ei**, gel**éi**a	area, law, jam
eo eu éu	víd**eo**, **Eu**ropa, c**éu**	video, Europe, sky
ia ie io iu	notíc**ia**, sér**ie**, sér**io**, sa**iu**	news, grade, serious, he left
oa oi ói ou	amênd**oa**, b**oi**, her**ói**, **ou**ro	almond, ox, hero, gold
ua ue ui uo	ág**ua**, tên**ue**, ru**i**vo, vác**uo**	water, tenuous, red-haired, vacuum
uai uão	Parag**uai**, sag**uão**	Paraguay, lobby

1.6. Combination of consonants

Double consonants besides **rr/ss** can frequently be seen in surnames, normally of Italian origin (e.g. Celegatti). As in English, consonants can also be combined with **l** as in *clima* (climate) or **r** as in *Brasil* (Brazil). There are other combinations of consonants besides the consonants presented in this Pronunciation Guide, but the pronunciation does not differ very much from English as in *advogado* (lawyer), *infecção* (infection), *compacto* (compact), *corrupto* (corrupt), *observação* (remark), *optar* (to opt), etc. Exceptions are *psicologia* (psychology) or *pneu* (tire) where the **p** is pronounced.

1.7. Stress

In Portuguese there are words of one, two, three or more syllables like *chá* (tea), *livro* (book), *português* (Portuguese), *telefone* (telephone). The stress always falls on any one of the last three syllables. It may have an accent, like in *você* (you), *médico* (physician) or may not have an accent, like in *festa* (party), *loja* (shop). The **most commonly stressed** syllable is the **second to last syllable** like *livro* (book), *água* (water), *estudante* (student), *comida* (food), etc.
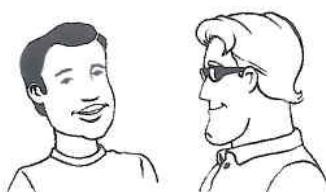
1.8. Different regional pronunciations

As Brazil is a huge country the pronunciation can vary slightly from region to region, but in general you will not have problems understanding regional accents. Below there are examples of the **most common different pronunciations**. Note that there are **two major different pronunciations** and both are correct. As sounds cannot be reproduced here, find Brazilian friends from São Paulo and Rio to pronounce the following words for you.

letter	Portuguese	English
r	carta, revista, carro, Conrado	letter, magazine, car, name
s x z	escola, inglês, sexta-feira, feliz	school, English, Friday, happy
e o	ele, livro	he, book
de di	cidade, dia	city, day
te ti	contente, tipo	happy, type

Remarks:

- Before a consonant or after a vowel, as in *carta* (letter), **r** can be pronounced like the French **r** as in *jour* or like the English **r** as in *morning*. However, if **r** is placed at the beginning as in *revista* (magazine), doubled as in *carro* (car) or placed after **n** as in *Conrado* (name), the pronunciation is similar to the English **h**, but it varies slightly from region to region.
- If **s/x/z** precede another consonant or come after a vowel as in *escola* (school), *inglês* (English), *sexta-feira* (Friday) or *feliz* (happy), they vary slightly in pronunciation in different regions.
- At the end of a word **e** is normally pronounced like [e] as in *ele* (he) and **o** is pronounced like [oo] as in *livro* (book) if they are unstressed. But don't try to pronounce every **e** like [e] and every **o** like [oo]. Just listen to how the people speak and with time you won't have any problem at all.
- In Brazil, the pronunciation of the following **de/di/te/ti** can be a bit tricky. Depending on the region, these sounds can be hard (Recife) or soft sounding (Rio) and both are correct. The soft sounding one is pronounced with a sound similar to the word *edge* as in *cidade* (city) and *dia* (day) and *cheap* as in *contente* (happy) and *tipo* (type). Note that the use of **the soft sound is a feature of the Brazilian speech** and the pronunciation can vary. With **de** and **te** for example, the soft sound does not always apply as in *dedo* (finger), *federal* (federal), *televisão* (TV), *tesouro* (treasure), etc. If you like the soft sound you will pick it up easily if you live in Brazil for a while.

Você é **paulista**? Não, sou **carioca**.
Are you **from São Paulo**? No, I am **from Rio**.

2. SIMILARITIES BETWEEN PORTUGUESE AND ENGLISH

Even though English is not a Latin language, there are more similarities between Portuguese and English than you might imagine. However, pronunciation and stress can sometimes be very different between English and Portuguese. You can expand your vocabulary very quickly if you remember these endings:

Portuguese		English	
acto/ato	impacto/contato	act	impact/contact
ecto/eto	aspecto/projeto	ect	aspect/project
ado/ada	irritado/irritada	ed	irritated
al/o	natural/típico	al	natural/typical
ante	importante	ant	important
ente/ento	presidente/talento	ent	president/talent
ável/ível	provável/possível	able/ible	probable/possible
ção	informação	tion	information
cia/ça	experiência/sentença	ce	experience/sentence
cia	democracia	cy	democracy
dade	cidade	ty	city
es	especial	s	special
esso	sucesso	ess	success
fia	filosofia	phy	philosophy
fone	telefone	phone	telephone
gem	garagem	age	garage
gia	tecnologia	gy	technology
ia/io	família/aniversário	y	family/anniversary
ico	público	ic	public
isar/izar	avisar/organizar	ise/ize	advise/organize
ismo	turismo	ism	tourism
ista	dentista/analista	ist/yst	dentist/analyst
ivo/iva	positivo/alternativa	ive	positive/alternative
ma	programa/problema cinema	am/em/ma	program/problem cinema
mente	exatamente	ly	exactly
mento	documento	ment	document
ogo	diálogo	gue	dialogue
or	diretor	or	director
oso/o	famoso/próspero	ous	famous/prosperous
ro	centro	er	center
são	televisão	sion	television
ssão	expressão	ssion	expression
ta	diplomata/astronauta	at/aut	diplomat/astronaut
ura/uro	cultura/futuro	ure	culture/future
uto	minuto	ute	minute

3. WORD ORDER

In general, the structure of a sentence in Portuguese does not differ very much from English.

adverb	subject	verb	direct object	indirect object
Ontem	eu	comprei	uma camiseta branca	para você.
Yesterday	I	bought	a white T-shirt	for you.

As in English, there are different types of sentences.

sentences	Portuguese	English
positive statement	Ele é americano.	He is American.
negative statement	Ele não é americano.	He is not American.
question	Ele é americano?	Is he American?
question tag	Ele é americano, não é?	He is American, isn't he?

In a sentence not only the subject and the verb must agree, but also **the subject (or noun) and the adjective must agree** in gender and in number.

sentences	Portuguese	English
singular/masculine	Ele é americano.	He is American.
singular/feminine	Ela é americana.	She is American.
plural/masculine	Eles são americanos.	They are American.
plural/feminine	Elas são americanas.	They are American.

Remarks:

- In Portuguese, adjectives can be either masculine or feminine, singular or plural.
- Unlike English, in Portuguese the lower case letter is used to write months, nationalities, days of the week and seasons of the year. Like English, the capital letter is generally used to begin a sentence, to write proper nouns, titles of people, etc.
- In a question just raise your voice at the end of the sentence as in English.
- *Não* (no/not), used as *not*, is always placed before the verb in Portuguese.
- The question tag is different from English and not as frequently used as in English. To form a question tag the same verb used in the beginning of the sentence must be repeated in the question tag. e.g. Você **fala** português, **não fala**? (You **speak** Portuguese, **don't you**?)
- The question tag *não é*, frequently used in speech, is contracted to *né* in colloquial Portuguese and it is also often used with other verbs meaning *isn't it true/right*? e.g. Você **fala** português, **né**? (You **speak** Portuguese, **right**?)

4. ACCENTS

If you are a beginner, you don't have to worry about accents. Even some native speakers have problems writing accents correctly. For those who want to learn how to use accents in Portuguese, here are the rules:

4.1. Words stressed on the third last syllable

All words stressed on the third last syllable have an accent on that syllable.

Portuguese	English
médico, ônibus, número, triângulo	doctor, bus, number, triangle

4.2. Words stressed on the second last syllable

words ending in	Portuguese	English
ã ão	órfã, órgão	orphan, organ
ea eo oa	área, óleo, amêndoa	area, oil, almond
ei eis	jóquei, túneis	jockey, tunnels
i is us	táxi, tênis, vírus	taxi, tennis, virus
ia ie io	Ásia, cárie, rádio	Asia, cavity, radio
l n r x	fácil, náilon, zíper, Félix	easy, nylon, zip, Felix
ua ue uo	água, tênue, indivíduo	water, tenuous, individual
ee oo um uns	lêem, vôo, álbum, álbuns	they read, flight, album, albums

4.3. Words stressed on the last syllable

words ending in	Portuguese	English
one syllable	nós, pé, chá, mês	we, foot, tea, month
stressed á ê é ô ó	sofá, você, café, vovô, vovó	sofa, you, coffee, grandpa, granny
em ens	ninguém, parabéns	nobody, congratulations

4.4. Words stressed either on the second last or on the last syllable

words containing	Portuguese	English
éi éu ói	idéia, hotéis, chapéu, jóia	idea, hotels, hat, jewel
í ú	saída, país, saúde	exit, country, health

Remarks:
- There is **no accent** if **i** comes before **m, n, nh, r, u,** and **z**. e.g. ruim (bad), ainda (still), rainha (queen), sair (to leave), saiu (he left) and raiz (root).
- Note that some words have an **accent for special reasons**. e.g. pode/pôde (can/could), por/pôr (for/to put), por que/por quê (why at the beginning/end of a phrase), para/pára (for/it stops), à(s) (preposition **a** + definite article **a** = à) and feminine expressions like à noite (in the evening), às vezes (sometimes), etc.

5. HYPHENATION

When breaking the word with a hyphen, the hyphen is usually inserted between syllables (units of sound). The word **Brasil** has two syllables **Bra-sil** and the word **brasileiros** has four syllables **bra-si-lei-ros**.

Portuguese	English
au-la, lei-te, no-tí-cia, ou-ro	class, milk, news, gold
di-a, sa-í-da, vô-o, pa-ís	day, exit, flight, country
cho-co-la-te, mu-lher, di-nhei-ro, pra-to	chocolate, woman, money, plate
ad-vo-ga-do, psi-có-lo-go, in-fec-ção	lawyer, psychologist, infection
car-ro, as-si-na-tu-ra, pis-ci-na	car, signature, swimming pool
des-li-ga-do, de-sen-vol-vi-do	switched off, developed

Remark: Avoid breaking words, or buy a dictionary which shows where to hyphenate words.

6. PUNCTUATION MARKS

The use of punctuation marks does not differ very much from English.

symbol	Portuguese	English
.	(o) ponto final	full stop
,	(a) vírgula	comma
;	(o) ponto-e-vírgula	semicolon
:	(os) dois-pontos	colon
...	(as) reticências	ellipsis
?	(o) ponto de interrogação	question mark
!	(o) ponto de exclamação	exclamation mark
-	(o) hífen = tracinho	hyphen
—	(o) travessão	dash
/	(a) barra	slash/oblique/solidus
'	(o) apóstrofo	apostrophe
" "	(as) aspas (entre aspas)	quotation marks
( )	(os) parênteses (entre parênteses)	parentheses
{ }	(as) chaves (entre chaves)	braces
[ ]	(os) colchetes (entre colchetes)	brackets
*	(o) asterisco	asterisk
@	(a) arroba	at
&	e	ampersand

Como se escreve isto em português?
How do you write this in Portuguese?

7. ARTICLES

7.1. The definite article

article	masculine	feminine	English
singular	o	a	the
plural	os	as	the

The definite article is more frequently used in Portuguese than in English. It is used before nouns, some countries, continents, oceans, seas, rivers, group of islands, chains of mountains, deserts, regions, seasons of the year, days of the week, colors, possessive pronouns, parts of the body, titles and even before people's names in some regions of Brazil. **The definite article refers to a particular object. It specifies the object and at the same time it indicates its gender and number.**

Portuguese	English
o livro	**the** book
a casa	**the** house
o Brasil	Brazil
a Europa	Europe
o rio Amazonas	**the** Amazon River
as Maldivas	Maldives
os Alpes	**the** Alps
o Nordeste	**the** Northeast
o verão	summer
(o) domingo	Sunday
o azul	**the** blue color
(o) meu carro	my car
o Dr. Paulo, **o** Sr. Paulo	Dr. Paul, Mr. Paul
(o) Pedro, **(a)** Maria	Peter, Mary

Remarks:

- The use of the definite article before people's names is grammatically incorrect, but it is very common in some regions, especially in the South.
- The use of the definite article before titles and names is only used when talking about a person, not when addressing him or her directly.
- The use of the definite article before possessive pronouns, the days of the week, etc. is optional (indicated by parentheses above).
- In Portuguese the definite article (not the possessive pronoun) is normally used with parts of the body and articles of clothes. e.g. Cortei **o** dedo. (I cut **my** finger.) – Vou tirar **o** casaco. (I am going to take off **my** coat.)
- Unlike English, in Portuguese the definite article is not used before musical instruments. e.g. Ela toca piano. (She plays **the** piano.)

- In Portuguese, the definite article (not the indefinite) is used in expressions of price. e.g. R$5 o quilo, o metro, a dúzia (R$5 a kilo, a meter, a dozen)

Portuguese	English
O livro está na mesa.	The book is on the table.
A professora é brasileira.	The teacher is Brazilian.
O Brasil fica na América do Sul.	Brazil is in South America.
Vou lavar as mãos.	I am going to wash my hands.
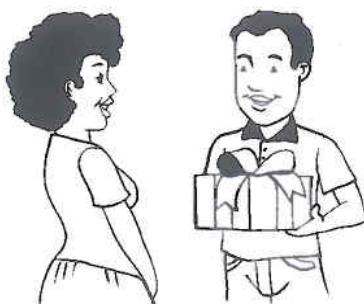
7.1.1. The definite article and prepositions

prep. + article	masculine	feminine	English
de + o(s), a(s)	do(s)	da(s)	of the, from the
em + o(s), a(s)	no(s)	na(s)	in the, on the, at the
a + o(s), a(s)	ao(s)	à(s)	to the, for the
para + o(s), a(s)	para o(s)	para a(s)	to the, for the
por + o(s), a(s)	pelo(s)	pela(s)	for the, by the

Portuguese	English
Estamos no Hotel Vila Rica.	We are in the Vila Rica Hotel.
Eles moram em São Paulo.	They live in São Paulo.
Ela gosta do Brasil.	She likes Brazil.
Vocês também vão à festa?	Are you also going to the party?
Preciso ir ao supermercado.	I have to go to the supermarket.
A aula começa às duas horas.	The class begins at two o'clock.
Vamos para o Brasil em maio.	We are going to Brazil in May.
Obrigado pela informação.	Thanks for the information.

Remarks:

- The preposition must always agree with the following word, which can be masculine, feminine, plural, singular or none of them.
- Prepositions às, à and ao (at) are also used to say the time in Portuguese.
- The definite article is omitted when used before one's home, but obligatory when used before someone else's home. e.g. Eu vou para casa. (I am going home.) - Eu vou para a casa dele. (I am going to his house.)

Muito obrigado pelo presente.
Thanks very much for the gift.

7.2. The indefinite article

article	masculine	feminine	English
singular	um	uma	a/one
plural	uns	umas	some

The indefinite article is used before singular nouns. **It represents no particular person or thing**. There is also a plural form which is used to show an approximation or as alternative to *alguns/algumas* (some).

Portuguese	English
um livro	**a/one** book
uma casa	**a/one** house
uns 5 livros	**approximately** 5 books
uns amigos	**some** friends

Remark: Be aware that in Portuguese the indefinite article is not used to denote a profession, in expressions of speed or ratio nor in exclamations. e.g. Ele é professor. (He is **a** teacher.); 20km **por** hora (20 km **an** hour); uma vez **por** dia (once **a** day); Que casa bonita! (What **a** nice house!).

Portuguese	English
Há **um** livro na mesa.	There is **a** book on the table.
Conheço **uma** professora brasileira.	I know **a** Brazilian teacher.
O Brasil é **um** país tropical.	Brazil is **a** tropical country.

7.2.1. The indefinite article and prepositions

prep. + article	masculine	feminine	English
de + um, uma	de um = dum	de uma = duma	of a, from a
em + um, uma	em um = num	em uma = numa	in a, on a, at a
a + um, uma	a um	a uma	to a, for a, at a
para + um, uma	para um	para uma	to a, for a
por + um, uma	por um	por uma	for a, by a

Remark: In Brazil, the contraction *dum/duma* (of/from) is rarely used.

Portuguese	English
Estamos **num** hotel.	We are **in a** hotel.
Eles moram **numa** casa.	They live **in a** house.
Preciso **de uma** cadeira.	I need **a** chair.
Nós vamos **a um** barzinho.	We go **to a** pub.
Telefonei **para uma** amiga.	I called **a** friend.
Esperamos **(por) uma** hora.	We waited **for an** hour.

8. NOUNS

A noun is a word for naming persons, things, places and animals. In Portuguese, a noun can be either masculine or feminine in gender; singular or plural in number. It is very important to know the gender, otherwise you will not sound Brazilian. The best way to learn the gender of a noun is to memorize it with its definite article. In Portuguese, most of the nouns end in o or in a. In general, nouns ending in o as in *carro* (car) or nouns referring to male people like *amigo* (male friend) or animals like *gato* (male cat), are masculine while nouns ending in a as in *casa* (house) or nouns referring to female people like *amiga* (female friend) or animals like *gata* (female cat), are feminine.

Remark: Some adjectives, adverbs and verbs can also be used as nouns if preceded by the definite article. e.g. o bom, o mal, o ser (**the** good/bad/being).

8.1. Masculine and feminine nouns

8.1.1. Nouns ending in o become feminine by changing o to a

masculine	feminine	English
o amigo	a amiga	the male/female friend
o brasileiro	a brasileira	the Brazilian man/woman

Remarks:

- Exceptions to the above rule: a tribo (tribe), o/a modelo (model), etc.
- Even people's names have a feminine form. e.g. Paulo/Paula (Paul/Paula).
- Words used in their shortened form keep their feminine gender. e.g. a foto = a fotografia (photo), a moto = a motocicleta (motorbike)

8.1.2. Nouns ending in l/or/ês/z make the feminine by adding a

masculine	feminine	English
o espanhol	a espanhola	the Spanish man/woman
o professor	a professora	the male/female teacher
o inglês	a inglesa	the English man/woman
o juiz	a juíza	the male/female judge

Exceptions: o ator > a atriz (actor/actress), o cônsul > a consulesa (consul)

8.1.3. Nouns ending in ão make the feminine by changing ão to ã/oa/ona

masculine	feminine	English
o alemão	a alemã	the German man/woman
o patrão	a patroa	the male/female boss
o solteirão	a solteirona	the bachelor/spinster

8.1.4. Nouns ending in a/e/ante/ente/ista/l/r which have both genders

masculine	feminine	English
o colega	a colega	the male/female colleague
o chefe	a chefe	the male/female boss
o estudante	a estudante	the male/female student
o assistente	a assistente	the male/female assistant
o turista	a turista	the male/female tourist
o rival	a rival	the male/female rival
o repórter	a repórter	the male/female reporter

Exception: o poeta > a poetisa

8.1.5. Nouns whose masculine and feminine forms are completely different

masculine	feminine	English
o pai	a mãe	the father/mother
o homem	a mulher	the man/woman
o rei	a rainha	the king/queen
o boi	a vaca	the ox/cow
o macho	a fêmea	the male/female animal

8.1.6. Nouns used for both male or female people and animals

Portuguese	English
a criança	the child
a vítima	the victim
a testemunha	the witness
a cobra	the snake
o camelo	the camel

Remark: Some nouns referring to animals like *cobra* (snake), *camelo* (camel), etc. could be either of masculine or feminine sex. In this case, when one wants to specify the gender of an animal, one should use *macho* (male) or *fêmea* (female) after the noun. e.g. a cobra **macho** (the **male** snake)

8.1.7. Nouns for which masculine and feminine have different meanings

masculine	feminine	English	
o banheiro	a banheira	the bathroom	the bathtub
o bolso	a bolsa	the pocket	the bag
o cargo	a carga	the position	the load
o porto	a porta	the harbor	the door
o tesouro	a tesoura	the treasure	the scissors
o cara	a cara	the guy/man	the face

8.2. Masculine nouns

In general nouns ending in o are masculine, but there are also other endings which indicate that a noun is masculine. It is worth knowing these endings, as it will make the use of genders much easier. There are some exceptions, but in general **most** of the words with these endings are masculine.

8.2.1. Nouns ending in stressed vowel (á/é/ê/i/u)

Portuguese	English
o sofá	the sofa
o café	the coffee
o bebê	the baby boy/girl
o abacaxi	the pineapple
o bambu	the bamboo

Exceptions: **a** pá (shovel), **a** fé (faith), **a** maré (tide), etc.

8.2.2. Nouns ending in l (al/el/il/ol/ul)
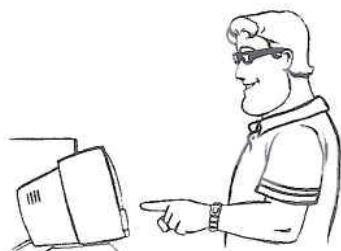
Portuguese	English
o carnaval	the carnival
o hotel	the hotel
o barril	the barrel
o girassol	the sunflower
o sul	the south

Exceptions: **a** capital (capital), **a** catedral (cathedral), etc.

8.2.3. Nouns ending in r (ar/er/ir/or/ur)

Portuguese	English
o bar	the bar
o prazer	the pleasure
o amor	the love
o abajur	the lamp-shade

Exceptions: **a** cor (color), **a** dor (pain), **a** flor (flower), etc.

De quem é este **computador**?
Whose **computer** is this?

8.2.4. Nouns ending in e (ante/ente/ete/ope/ote/que/ume)

Portuguese	English
o restaur**ante**	the restaurant
o acid**ente**	the accident
o sorv**ete**	the ice cream
o envel**ope**	the envelope
o pac**ote**	the package
o par**que**	the park
o perf**ume**	the perfume
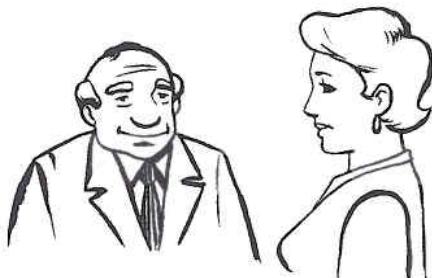
Exceptions:

- **a** estante (bookcase)
- **a** corrente (chain), **a** enchente (flood), **a** lente (lens), **a** semente (seed), etc.
- **a** lanchonete (cafeteria), **a** manchete (headline), **a** camionete (truck), etc.
- nouns ending in **ade** like **a** cid**ade** (city), **a** universid**ade** (university), etc.

8.2.5. Nouns ending in m (em/im/om/um)

Portuguese	English
o tr**em**	the train
o jard**im**	the garden
o bomb**om**	the fine chocolate
o álb**um**	the album

Exceptions: **a** nuvem (cloud), **a** ordem (order), etc.

Lena, eu preciso de **um envelope**.
Helen, I need **an envelope**.

8.2.6. Nouns of Greek origin ending in ma

Portuguese	English
o cinema	the cinema
o dilema	the dilemma
o diploma	the diploma
o drama	the drama
o esquema	the scheme
o grama	the gram
o idioma	the language
o lema	the motto
o panorama	the view
o poema	the poem
o problema	the problem
o programa	the program
o sintoma	the symptom
o sistema	the system
o telefonema	the call
o telegrama	the telegram
o tema	the subject/theme
o trauma	the trauma

Remark: Note that if a noun ending in **ma** is not of Greek origin, its gender is feminine. e.g. **a** cama (bed), **a** lama (mud), **a** fama (fame), etc.

8.2.7. More masculine nouns ending in a

Portuguese	English
o cara	the guy/man
o champanha	the champagne
o clima	the climate
o cometa	the comet
o dia	the day
o fantasma	the ghost
o guarda-chuva	the umbrella
o inseticida	the insecticide
o mapa	the map
o pijama	the pajamas
o planeta	the planet
o samba	the samba
o tapa	the slap

Remarks:

- These are the most useful examples, but there are many others.
- Compound nouns containing the word *guarda* are masculine.

8.3. Feminine nouns

In general nouns ending in **a** are feminine, but there are also other endings which indicate a noun is feminine. Even though there are some exceptions, in general **most** of the words with these endings are feminine. It is worth knowing these endings, as it will make the use of genders much easier.

8.3.1. Nouns ending in ade

Portuguese	English
a cid**ade**	the city

8.3.2. Nouns ending in gem

Portuguese	English
a via**gem**	the trip
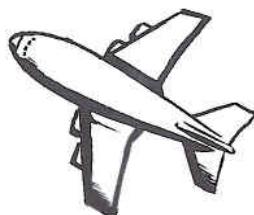
8.3.3. Nouns ending in ção/são/ssão/são/zão

Portuguese	English
a li**ção**	the lesson
a man**são**	the mansion
a profi**ssão**	the profession
a previ**são**	the forecast
a ra**zão**	the reason

Exceptions: **o** coração (heart), **o** blusão (sports jacket), etc.

8.3.4. Nouns ending in ez/ice/ise/ase/ose

Portuguese	English
a timid**ez**	the shyness
a burr**ice**	the dumbness
a cr**ise**	the crisis
a f**ase**	the phase
a d**ose**	the dose

Boa **viagem**!
Have a nice **trip**!

8.4. Plural of nouns

Nouns can be singular or plural in number. Generally, just adding **s** makes the plural form. However, there are also some useful rules, which should be followed in order to be structurally accurate.

8.4.1. Nouns ending in vowels, add s

singular	plural	English
a casa	as casas	the house/houses
a maçã	as maçãs	the apple/apples
o dente	os dentes	the tooth/teeth
o táxi	os táxis	the taxi/taxis
o livro	os livros	the book/books
o caju	os cajus	the cashew/cashews

Remark: Some nouns are used only in the plural form. e.g. *as férias* (holiday), *os óculos* (glasses), etc.

8.4.2. Nouns ending in r/s/z, add es

singular	plural	English
o dólar	os dólares	the dollar/dollars
o mês	os meses	the month/months
o rapaz	os rapazes	the young man/men

Remark: Nouns ending in s with no change between the singular and plural form: o/os ônibus (bus), lápis (pencil), vírus (virus), tênis (sneakers), pires (saucer), etc.

8.4.3. Nouns ending in m, just drop m and add ns

singular	plural	English
o jardim	os jardins	the garden/gardens

Remark: m comes only before b/p. e.g. bomba (bomb), tempo (time/weather)

8.4.4. Nouns ending in al/el/ol/ul, just drop l and add is

singular	plural	English
o hospital	os hospitais	the hospital/hospitals
o hotel	os hotéis	the hotel/hotels
o girassol	os girassóis	the sunflower/sunflowers
o azul	os azuis	the blue color/blue ones

Exception: o gol > os gols (goal/goals)

8.4.5. Nouns ending in il

If the last syllable is stressed, drop l and add **s**, but if the second to last syllable is stressed, drop il and add **eis**.

singular	plural	English
o ba<u>rril</u>	os barris	the barrel/barrels
o <u>fóssil</u>	os fósseis	the fossil/fossils

8.4.6. Nouns ending in ção/são/ssão/são/zão, **just drop** ão **and add** ões

singular	plural	English
a lição	as lições	the lesson/lessons
a mansão	as mansões	the mansion/mansions
a profissão	as profissões	the profession/professions
a previsão	as previsões	the forecast/forecasts
a razão	as razões	the reason/reasons

8.4.7. Nouns ending in ão **have an irregular plural form**

singular	plural	English
o alemão	os alemães	the German/Germans
o limão	os limões	the lemon/lemons
a mão	as mãos	the hand/hands

Remarks:

- Plural nouns ending in **ões** are the most common.
- Nouns stressed on the second to last syllable always make the plural in **ãos**. e.g. <u>órgão</u> > órg**ãos** (organ/organs), <u>órfão</u> > órfã**os** (orphan/orphans), etc.
- There are only a few frequently used nouns which make the plural in **ães**. e.g. pão > pães (bread/s), cão > cães (dog/s), capitão > capitães (captain/s), etc.

8.4.8. Compound nouns

singular	plural	English
a couve-flor (noun + noun)	as couves-flores	the cauliflower(s)
o cachorro-quente (noun + adjective)	os cachorros-quentes	the hotdog(s)
a segunda-feira (numeral + noun)	as segundas-feiras	- Monday(s)
o guarda-chuva (verb + noun)	os guarda-chuvas	the umbrella(s)
o alto-falante (invariable + noun)	os alto-falantes	the loudspeaker(s)
a pimenta-do-reino (noun+de+noun)	as pimentas-do-reino	the black pepper(s)
o saca-rolhas (verb + plural noun)	os saca-rolhas	the corkscrew(s)

Remark: Compound nouns are not numerous.

9. NOUN SUFFIXES

In Portuguese there are suffixes which can change the size of a noun.

9.1. Diminutive

The diminutive is frequently used in Brazil. It is normally used to show a small version of something, but depending on the context, it is also used to emphasize something, to express affection, irony or even in idiomatic expressions. It is particularly common when one talks to small children or refers to their things. Diminutive names are often used by family members and close friends. The **most common diminutive suffixes** are inho/inha and zinho/zinha.

Remarks:

- In general, if a noun is **stressed on the last syllable**, just add **zinho/zinha**, but if it is **stressed on the second last syllable**, just add **inho/inha**. e.g. café > cafezinho (coffee/small coffee), livro > livrinho (book/small book)
- A small thing can also be expressed with the adjective *pequeno/pequena* (small). e.g. um pedacinho = um pedaço pequeno (a small piece).
- Diminutive suffixes are also used with some adjectives and adverbs. e.g. quentinho (very warm), cedinho (very early)
- **Exception:** The adjective *pequeno/a* is an exception to the above suffix rule. e.g. pequenininho/a (very small)

9.1.1. Nouns ending in a/e/o, just drop a/e/o and add inho/inha

regular form	diminutive	English
a casa	a casinha	the small house
o dente	o dentinho	the small tooth
o livro	o livrinho	the booklet

Exception: Some words ending in **io/eio** are made diminutive by dropping o and adding **nha/nho**. e.g. relógio > reloginho (watch), cheio/a > cheinho/a (full).

9.1.2. Nouns ending in ça/ço/ca/co/ga/go have a minor spelling change

regular form	diminutive	English
o moço	o mocinho	the young man
a praça	a pracinha	the small square
a faca	a faquinha	the small knife
o barco	o barquinho	the small boat
o jogo	o joguinho	the small game/set
a amiga	a amiguinha	the little female friend

9.1.3. Nouns ending in s/z, just add inho/inha

regular form	diminutive	English
Luís	Luisinho	little Luis (pet name)
o nariz	narizinho	the small nose

9.1.4. Nouns ending in stressed á/é/ê/i/ó/ô/u, l/m/r, ã/ãe/ão, just add zinho/zinha

regular form	diminutive	English
o sofá	o sofazinho	the small sofa
o café	o cafezinho	the small coffee
o bebê	o bebezinho	the small baby
o abacaxi	o abacaxizinho	the small pineapple
o paletó	o paletozinho	the small jacket
o vovô	o vovozinho	the grandfather (grandpa)
o caju	o cajuzinho	the small cashew
o hotel	o hotelzinho	the small hotel
o jardim	o jardinzinho	the small garden
a colher	a colherzinha	the small spoon
a irmã	a irmãzinha	the little sister
a mãe	a mãezinha	the dear mother
o irmão	o irmãozinho	the little brother

Remarks:

- Nouns ending in **m** are changed to **n** before adding the diminutive suffix because **m** comes only before **b/p** in Portuguese.
- Acute and circumflex accents are dropped when a noun is used in the diminutive form.

Um minutinho, por favor.
Just a minute, please.

9.1.5. Plural of diminutive nouns

In general, just add **s** to the suffix **inho/inha/zinho/zinha**.

regular form	diminutive	English
o livrinho	os livrinhos	the small books
o cafezinho	os cafezinhos	the small coffees
a mãozinha	as mãozinhas	the small hands

Remark: The above rule does not apply for nouns ending in **al/el/ol** and **ão** which make plural form in **ães** or **ões**. Go back to the plural form, drop the **s** and put the **s** at the end of the suffix.

regular form	plural form	diminutive	English
o hospital	os hospitais	os hospitaizinhos	the small hospitals
o hotel	os hotéis	os hoteizinhos	the small hotels
o lençol	os lençóis	os lençoizinhos	the small bed sheets
o pão	os pães	os pãezinhos	the small bread rolls
o avião	os aviões	os aviõezinhos	the small planes
o coração	os corações	os coraçõezinhos	the small hearts

Remark: Acute and circumflex accents are dropped when a noun is used in the diminutive form.

Meu filho adora **livro de estorinhas**.
My son loves **story books**.

9.2. Augmentative

The augmentative is normally used to show a large version of something, but sometimes it can also be used for emphasis, to express admiration or scorn. It is not as frequently used as the diminutive. The **most common augmentative suffixes** used in **colloquial** Portuguese are **ão/zão** used for masculine nouns and **ona/zona** used for feminine nouns.

Remarks:

* A big thing can also be expressed with an adjective like *grande* (big) or *enorme* (huge). e.g. um pedação = um pedaço grande/enorme (a big/huge piece).
* Augmentative suffixes can also be used with adjectives. e.g. grand**ão** (very big)
* The augmentative is rarely used in the plural form. e.g. carr**ões** (big cars)

9.2.1. Masculine suffixes ão/zão

regular form	augmentative	English
um carr**o**	um carr**ão**	a big car
um mont**e**	um mont**ão**	a big pile
um temp**o**	um temp**ão**	a long time
(o) Pedr**o**	(o) Pedr**ão**	strong/tall/fat Pedro
bonit**o**	bonit**ão**	handsome
grand**e**	grand**ão**	big, huge

9.2.2. Feminine suffixes ona/zona

regular form	augmentative	English
uma mes**a**	uma mes**ona**	a big table
uma fil**a**	uma fil**ona**	a long queue
(a) Cid**a**	(a) Cid**ona**	strong/tall/fat Cida
bonit**a**	bonit**ona**	pretty
grand**e**	grand**ona**	big, huge

Remark: *Bonitão/bonitona* (handsome/pretty) usually refer to a man/woman still in good shape for his/her age.

Já faz **um tempão** que eu não jogo tênis.
I haven't played tennis for **a long time**.

10. COLLECTIVE NOUNS

Collective nouns are singular words, which indicate a group of people, animals or things as a whole. You will discover the most frequently used ones by reading, but here are few examples:

Portuguese	English
um bando de pássaros	a flock of birds
um buquê (de flores)	a bouquet of flowers
um cacho de uvas	a bunch of grapes
uma coleção de selos	a collection of stamps
um pomar de laranjas	an orchard of orange trees
uma multidão (de gente)	a crowd of people

Comprei **uma penca de bananas**.
I bought **a bunch of bananas**.

11. ADJECTIVES

Adjectives are used to describe nouns or pronouns and in Portuguese they always agree with the nouns and pronouns they qualify. This means adjectives, colors and nationalities, can be either **masculine** or **feminine** (bonito/bonita - pretty), **singular** or **plural** (bonitos/bonitas - pretty).

Adjectives are usually placed **after** a noun.

Portuguese	English
Tenho alguns amigos **brasileiros**.	I have some **Brazilian** friends.
Onde está minha camisa **nova**?	Where is my **new** shirt?
Um moço **rico**, **bonito** e **inteligente**.	A **rich**, **handsome** and **intelligent** man.

However, certain adjectives are sometimes placed **before** the noun.

Portuguese	English
Ele é um **bom** professor.	He is a **good** teacher.
Ela é uma **boa** aluna.	She is a **good** student.
Até a **próxima** semana!	See you **next** week.
É a **primeira** vez que venho aqui.	It is the **first** time I have been here.

Often, the position of an adjective alters the sense of the phrase.

Portuguese	English
Ele é um **velho** amigo meu.	He is an **old** friend of mine.
Ele é um **grande** homem.	He is a **great** man.

Some adjectives become nouns and vice-versa.

Portuguese	English
Eu tenho alguns amigos **brasileiros**.	I have some **Brazilian** friends.
Os brasileiros adoram futebol.	**The Brazilians** love football.

Some past participles and expressions often have an adjective function.

Portuguese	English
Nós estamos muito **cansados**.	We are very **tired**.
Onde está o jornal **de hoje**?	Where is **today's** paper?

Some adjectives like nouns can also be used in the diminutive form.

Portuguese	English
Sua filha é muito **bonitinha**.	Your daughter is very **pretty**.
O bebê dela é tão **fofinho**.	Her baby is so **cute**.

11.1. Masculine and feminine adjectives

In general, adjectives form their feminine forms in the same way as nouns.

11.1.1. Adjectives ending in o become feminine by changing o to a

masculine	feminine	English
bonito	bonita	nice/pretty

11.1.2. Adjectives ending in es become feminine by adding a

masculine	feminine	English
chinês	chinesa	Chinese

Exceptions: *Simples* (simple) and *cortês* (polite) are invariable.

11.1.3. Adjectives ending in a/e/l/m/z are either masculine or feminine

masculine/feminine	English
belga	Belgian
inteligente	intelligent
fácil	easy
jovem	young
feliz	happy

Exceptions: espanhol > espanhola (Spanish), bom > boa (good)

11.1.4. Adjectives ending in ão become feminine by changing ão to ã/ona

masculine	feminine	English
alemão	alemã	German
comilão	comilona	someone who eats a lot

11.1.5. Adjectives ending in eu become feminine by changing eu to éia

masculine	feminine	English
europeu	européia	European

Exception: judeu > judia (Jew)

11.1.6. Adjectives ending in u become feminine by adding a

masculine	feminine	English
cru	crua	raw

Exception: mau > má (bad)

11.1.7. Adjectives ending in or

Some adjectives become feminine by changing **or** to **ora/eira**

masculine	feminine	English
sedut**or**	sedut**ora**	seductive
trabalhad**or**	trabalhad**eira**	hard-working

Some adjectives are neither masculine nor feminine

Portuguese	English
anterior/posterior	previous/subsequent
incolor/multicolor	colorless/multicolored
inferior/superior	inferior/superior
melhor/pior	better/worse

11.1.8. Compound adjectives

masculine	feminine	English
azul-clar**o**	azul-clar**a**	light blue
sul-american**o**	sul-american**a**	South American

11.2. Plural of adjectives

In general, adjectives form their plural forms in the same way as nouns.

11.2.1. Adjectives ending in vowels, **just add** s

singular	plural	English
bonit**a**	bonit**as**	nice/pretty
alemã	alemã**s**	German
nov**o**	nov**os**	new/young
interessant**e**	interessant**es**	interesting
cr**u**	cr**us**	raw

Remark: Adjectives ending in **oso/osso/ovo** have an open pronunciation (**ó** as in law) when used in the feminine (n**o**va) and plural form (n**o**vos/n**o**vas).

11.2.2. Adjectives ending in r/s/z, **just add** es

singular	plural	English
melho**r**	melho**res**	better
inglê**s**	ingle**ses**	English
feli**z**	feli**zes**	happy

Exceptions: *Simples* (simple) and *grátis* (free) are invariable.

11.2.3. Adjectives ending in m, just drop m and add ns

singular	plural	English
bom	bons	good

Remark: Remember that in Portuguese, **m** comes only before **b/p**.

11.2.4. Adjectives ending in al/el/ol/ul, just drop l and add is

singular	plural	English
nacional	nacionais	national
fiel	fiéis	loyal
espanhol	espanhóis	Spanish
azul	azuis	blue

11.2.5. Adjectives ending in il

If the last syllable is stressed, drop l and add **s**, but if the second to last syllable is stressed, drop l and add **eis**.

singular	plural	English
civil	civis	civil
fácil	fáceis	easy

Remark: Adjectives stressed on the second to last syllable are more common.

11.2.6. Adjectives ending in ão have an irregular form

singular	plural	English
anão	anões	dwarf
alemão	alemães	German

11.2.7. Compound adjectives

singular	plural	English
recém-nascido(a)	recém-nascidos(as)	newborn
mal-humorado(a)	mal-humorados(as)	bad tempered
sul-americano(a)	sul-americanos(as)	South American
azul-claro(a)	azul-claros(as)	light blue

Remark: Compound adjectives are rare.

Ela tem olhos **azuis**.
She has **blue** eyes.

11.3. Adjectives of color

Adjectives of color are more complicated in Portuguese than in English so they are studied separately, but the rules are the same as for other adjectives. Adjectives of color fall into three groups.

11.3.1. Adjectives ending in o: variable in gender and in number

masculine	feminine	English
branco(s)	branca(s)	white
preto(s)	preta(s)	black
amarelo(s)	amarela(s)	yellow
vermelho(s)	vermelha(s)	red
roxo(s)	roxa(s)	purple
azul-claro(s)	azul-clara(s)	light blue
azul-escuro(s)	azul-escura(s)	dark blue
dourado(s)	dourada(s)	golden
prateado(s)	prateada(s)	silver
castanho(s)	castanha(s)	brown (eyes/hair)
grisalho(s)	grisalha(s)	gray (hair/beard)

11.3.2. Adjectives ending in e/l/m/s: variable in number

singular	plural	English
bege	beges	beige
verde	verdes	green
azul	azuis	blue
marrom	marrons	brown
lilás	lilases	lilac

11.3.3. Adjectives also used as nouns: invariable

Portuguese	English
rosa = cor-de-rosa	pink
cinza = cor de cinza	gray = ash colored
laranja = cor de laranja	orange
abóbora = cor de abóbora	pumpkin colored
vinho = cor de vinho	wine colored
creme = cor de creme	cream

Remark: The colors *azul-marinho* (navy blue, dark blue), *amarelo-ouro* (golden yellow), *verde-abacate* (avocado green), etc. are also invariable.

Portuguese	English
Meu irmão tem olhos **verdes**.	My brother has **green** eyes.
Comprei uma camiseta **azul** e **branca**.	I bought a **blue** and **white** T-shirt.

11.4. Adjectives describing citizenship in the world

Adjectives describing citizenship will be studied separately, as they are more complicated in Portuguese than in English. The rules for using these adjectives are the same as for other adjectives. They also vary in gender and in number. It is best to learn them with their corresponding countries, states and continents.

	Portuguese		English	
a	África	africano/a	Africa	African
a	África do Sul	sul-africano/a	South Africa	South African
a	Albânia	albanês/albanesa	Albania	Albanian
a	Alemanha	alemão/alemã	Germany	German
a	América	americano/a	America	American
(a)	Angola	angolano/a	Angola	Angolan
a	Arábia Saudita	árabe	Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian
a	Argentina	argentino/a	Argentina	Argentinean
a	Ásia	asiático/a	Asia	Asian
a	Austrália	australiano/a	Australia	Australian
a	Áustria	austríaco/a	Austria	Austrian
a	Bélgica	belga	Belgium	Belgian
a	Bolívia	boliviano/a	Bolivia	Bolivian
o	Brasil	brasileiro/a	Brazil	Brazilian
a	Bulgária	búlgaro/a	Bulgaria	Bulgarian
o	Canadá	canadense	Canada	Canadian
o	Caribe	caribenho/a	Caribbean	Caribbean
o	Chile	chileno/a	Chile	Chilean
a	China	chinês/chinesa	China	Chinese
o	Chipre	cipriota	Cyprus	Cypriot
-	Cingapura	cingapuriano/a	Singapore	Singaporean
a	Colômbia	colombiano/a	Colombia	Colombian
a	Coréia	coreano/a	Korea	Korean
a	Costa Rica	costa-riquenho/a	Costa Rica	Costa Rican
a	Croácia	croata	Croatia	Croatian
-	Cuba	cubano/a	Cuba	Cuban
a	Dinamarca	dinamarquês/esa	Denmark	Dane, Danish
o	Egito	egípcio/a	Egypt	Egyptian
-	El Salvador	salvadorenho/a	El Salvador	Salvadorean
o	Equador	equatoriano/a	Ecuador	Ecuadorian
a	Escócia	escocês/escocesa	Scotland	Scot, Scottish
a	Eslováquia	eslovaco/a	Slovakia	Slovak
a	Eslovênia	esloveno/a	Slovenia	Slovenian
a	Espanha	espanhol/la	Spain	Spanish
os	Estados Unidos	americano/a	The USA	American
a	Etiópia	etíope	Ethiopia	Ethiopian
a	Europa	europeu/européia	Europe	European
as	Filipinas	filipino/a	The Philippines	Filipino
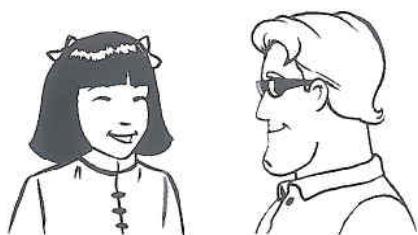
Portuguese			English	
a	Finlândia	finlandês/finlandesa	Finland	Finnish, Finn
a	França	francês/francesa	France	French
a	Grã-Bretanha	britânico/a	Great Britain/UK	British, Briton
a	Grécia	grego/a	Greece	Greek
a	Guatemala	guatemalteco/a	Guatemala	Guatemalan
a	Guiana	guianense	Guyana	Guyanese
a	Holanda	holandês/holandesa	Holland	Dutch
-	Honduras	hondurenho/a	Honduras	Honduran
a	Hungria	húngaro/a	Hungary	Hungarian
o	Iêmen	iemita	Yemen	Yemeni
a	Índia	indiano/a	India	Indian
a	Indonésia	indonésio/a	Indonesia	Indonesian
a	Inglaterra	inglês/inglesa	England	English
o	Irã	iraniano/a	Iran	Iranian
o	Iraque	iraquiano/a	Iraq	Iraqi
a	Irlanda	irlandês/irlandesa	Ireland	Irish
a	Islândia	islandês/islandesa	Iceland	Icelander
-	Israel	israelense	Israel	Israeli
a	Itália	italiano/a	Italy	Italian
a	Jamaica	jamaicano/a	Jamaica	Jamaican
o	Japão	japonês/japonesa	Japan	Japanese
a	Jordânia	jordaniano/a	Jordan	Jordanian
o	Líbano	libanês/libanesa	Lebanon	Lebanese
a	Malásia	malaio/a	Malaysia	Malaysian
o	Marrocos	marroquino/a	Morocco	Moroccan
o	México	mexicano/a	Mexico	Mexican
-	Moçambique	moçambicano/a	Mozambique	Mozambican
a	Mongólia	mongol	Mongolia	Mongolian
o	Nepal	nepalês/nepalesa	Nepal	Nepalese
a	Nicarágua	nicaragüense	Nicaragua	Nicaraguan
a	Nigéria	nigeriano/a	Nigeria	Nigerian
a	Noruega	norueguês/esa	Norway	Norwegian
a	Nova Zelândia	neozelandês/esa	New Zealand	N. Zealander
o	País de Gales	galês/esa	Wales	Welsh
o	Panamá	panamenho/a	Panama	Panamanian
o	Paquistão	paquistanês/esa	Pakistan	Pakistani
o	Paraguai	paraguaio/a	Paraguay	Paraguayan
o	Peru	peruano/a	Peru	Peruvian
a	Polinésia	polinésio/a	Polynesia	Polynesian
a	Polônia	polonês/polonesa	Poland	Polish
-	Portugal	português/esa	Portugal	Portuguese
a	Rep. Tcheca	tcheco/a	Czech Republic	Czech
a	Romênia	romeno/a	Romania	Romanian
a	Rússia	russo/a	Russia	Russian
o	Senegal	senegalês/esa	Senegal	Senegalese

Portuguese		English	
a	Sérvia	sérvio/a	Serbia	Serbian
a	Síria	sírio/a	Syria	Syrian
a	Somália	somali	Somalia	Somali
o	Sri Lanka	cingalês/cingalesa	Sri Lanka	Sri Lankan
a	Suécia	sueco/a	Sweden	Swedish
a	Suíça	suíço/a	Switzerland	Swiss
a	Tailândia	tailandês/tailandesa	Thailand	Thai
a	Tunísia	tunisiano/a	Tunisia	Tunisian
a	Turquia	turco/a	Turkey	Turkish, Turk
o	Uruguai	uruguaio/a	Uruguay	Uruguayan
a	Venezuela	venezuelano/a	Venezuela	Venezuelan
o	Vietnã	vietnamita	Vietnam	Vietnamese

Remarks:

- Unlike English, in Portuguese countries can be masculine, feminine or neither masculine nor feminine. Even if it appears strange, it is worthwhile practicing the countries and their adjectives.
- Most countries end in a are feminine.
- There is another word to describe people from the USA: *estadunidense(s)*, but usually *americano(s)* is preferred.

Portuguese	English
Eu sou **brasileira**.	I am **Brazilian**.
Eu sou **do** Brasil.	I am **from** Brazil.
Eu não moro **no** Brasil.	I do not live **in** Brazil.
O Brasil é um país tropical.	Brazil is a tropical country.
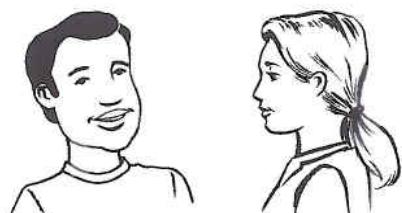
Você é **japonesa**? Não, sou **chinesa**.
Are you **Japanese**? No, I am **Chinese**.

11.5. Adjectives describing citizenship in Brazil

state		capital	adjective
o	Acre (AC)	Rio Branco	acreano/a
-	Alagoas (AL)	Maceió	alagoano/a
o	Amapá (AP)	Macapá	amapaense
o	Amazonas (AM)	Manaus	amazonense
a	Bahia (BA)	Salvador	baiano/a
o	Ceará (CE)	Fortaleza	cearense
o	Distrito Federal (DF)	Brasília	brasiliense
o	Espírito Santo (ES)	Vitória	capixaba
-	Goiás (GO)	Goiânia	goiano/a
-	Mato Grosso (MT)	Cuiabá	mato-grossense
o	Mato Grosso do Sul (MS)	Campo Grande	mato-grossense-do-sul
o	Maranhão (MA)	São Luís	maranhense
-	Minas Gerais (MG)	Belo Horizonte	mineiro/a
o	Pará (PA)	Belém	paraense
o	Paraná (PR)	Curitiba	paranaense
a	Paraíba (PB)	João Pessoa	paraibano/a
-	Pernambuco (PE)	Recife	pernambucano/a
o	Piauí (PI)	Teresina	piauiense
o	Rio de Janeiro (RJ)	Rio de Janeiro	fluminense, carioca
o	Rio Grande do Norte (RN)	Natal	rio-grandense-do-norte
o	Rio Grande do Sul (RS)	Porto Alegre	gaúcho/a
-	Rondônia (RO)	Porto Velho	rondoniense
-	Roraima (RR)	Boa Vista	roraimense
-	Santa Catarina (SC)	Florianópolis	catarinense
-	São Paulo (SP)	São Paulo	paulista, paulistano/a
-	Sergipe (SE)	Aracaju	sergipano/a
-	Tocantins (TO)	Palmas	tocantinense

Remarks:

* States can be masculine, feminine or neither.
* Although cities are feminine, they are normally not used in the feminine case.
  e.g. Ela mora **em** São Paulo. (She lives **in** São Paulo.)
* Rio de Janeiro, Recife, etc. are exceptions and are masculine. e.g. Ele mora **no** Rio de Janeiro/Recife. (He lives **in** Rio de Janeiro/Recife.)

Ela é **de São Paulo** e ele é **do Rio**.
She is **from São Paulo** and he is **from Rio**.

12. ADVERBS

Adverbs are used to modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs and also to express time or frequency. Almost all adverbs are invariable. They are usually placed before or after the word they modify. Adverbs usually answer the questions how/when/where/why. There are several types of adverbs.

12.1. Types of adverbs

12.1.1. Interrogative adverbs
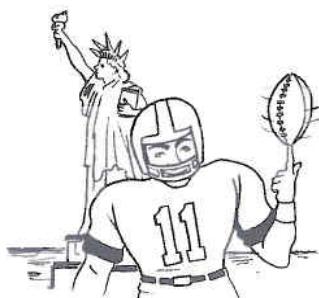
Portuguese	English
Como?	How?
Onde?, Aonde?, De onde?	Where?, To where?, From where?
Quando?	When?
Por que…?/Por quê?	Why?

12.1.2. Adverbs of manner

Portuguese	English
assim	so
bem, mal	well, badly
melhor, pior	better, worse
depressa, devagar	fast, slowly
rápido, rapidamente	fast, quickly
corretamente	correctly

12.1.3. Adverbs of place

Portuguese	English
aqui, cá	here
aí	there
ali, lá	there, over there
além	beyond
atrás	behind
dentro, fora	inside, outside
perto, longe	near, far

Onde ele mora? Nos Estados Unidos.
Where does he live? In the USA.

12.1.4. Adverbs of frequency

Portuguese	English
sempre	always, often
freqüentemente	frequently
raramente	rarely
diariamente	daily
nunca	never
jamais	never ever

12.1.5. Adverbs of time

Portuguese	English
agora	now
antigamente	in the past
atualmente	at present, now
imediatamente	immediately
já, ainda	already, still/yet
antes, depois	before, after
cedo, tarde	early, late
logo, breve, brevemente	soon
hoje, ontem, amanhã	today, yesterday, tomorrow

12.1.6. Adverbs of degree

Portuguese	English
bem	very
bastante	enough, a lot
demais	too much
mais, menos	more, less
muito, pouco	very, little
tão, tanto	so, so much
só, apenas	only, just
quase	almost
meio	a bit
todo/toda = completamente	completely

Exception: Adverbs are invariable except for *todo* (completely).

Portuguese	English
Ele estava **todo** molhado.	He was **completely** wet.
Ela estava **toda** molhada.	She was **completely** wet.

12.1.7. Adverbs of order

Portuguese	English
primeiro, primeiramente	first
segundo	second
depois	after
finalmente	finally
ultimamente	lately

12.1.8. Adverbs of doubt

Portuguese	English
talvez	maybe/perhaps
provavelmente	probably
possivelmente	possibly

12.1.9. Adverbs of certainty

Portuguese	English
claro, lógico	of course, sure, naturally
sim, não	yes, no

Portuguese	English
Ele fala **bem** português.	He speaks Portuguese **well**.
Ela chegou **ontem**.	She arrived **yesterday**.
Nós moramos **aqui**.	We live **here**.
Não saí **porque** estava chovendo.	I did not go out **because** it was raining.
Ele fuma **demais**.	He smokes **too much**.

Não fui à aula **porque** eu estava doente.
I didn't go to the class **because** I was sick.

12.2. Adverbs ending in mente

Adverbs ending in **mente** correspond to adverbs ending in **ly** in English. As in English these adverbs are often derived from adjectives.

12.2.1. Adverbs derived from adjectives ending in e/l/s/z, just add mente

Portuguese		English	
adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
urgent**e**	urgente**mente**	urgent	urgent**ly**
fáci**l**	facil**mente**	easy	easi**ly**
simple**s**	simples**mente**	simple	simp**ly**
feli**z**	feliz**mente**	happy/fortunate	fortunate**ly**

12.2.2. Adverbs derived from adjectives ending in o, just change o to a and add mente

Portuguese		English	
adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
antig**o** > **a**	antiga**mente**	old	in the past
complet**o** > **a**	completa**mente**	complete	complete**ly**
imediat**o** > **a**	imediata**mente**	immediate	immediate**ly**
últim**o** > **a**	ultima**mente**	last	late**ly**

Remark: If a sentence has two or more adverbs ending in **mente**, only the last one has the suffix **mente**. You can come across this kind of sentence in the written language. e.g. Ele falou **claro** e rapida**mente**. (He spoke **clearly** and **quickly**.)

Portuguese	English
Infelizmente não tenho tempo.	**Unfortunately** I do not have time.
Atualmente temos 500 funcionários.	**At present** we have 500 employees.
Preciso ir embora **imediatamente**.	I have to leave **immediately**.
Fomos **diretamente** para o hotel.	We went **directly** to the hotel.

Antigamente eu fumava muito.
In the past I used to smoke a lot.

12.3. Adjectives used as adverbs

Some adjectives become adverbs without any change in form.

Portuguese	English
alto	loud/high/tall
apressado	hasty
baixo	low/soft
direto	direct
rápido	quick/fast
urgente	urgent

Portuguese	English
Fale mais **alto**.	Speak **louder**.
Ele saiu **apressado**.	He left **in a hurry**.
Fale mais **baixo**.	Speak more **softly**.
Fui **direto** para o hotel.	I went **directly** to the hotel.
Anda **rápido**!	Walk **fast**!
Preciso falar com você **urgente**.	I have to talk to you **urgently**.

12.4. Adverbs used in the diminutive form

Some adverbs can also be used in the diminutive form, like nouns.

Portuguese	English
O escritório é **pertinho** da minha casa.	The office is **very close** to my house.
Ela levantou **cedinho** hoje.	She woke up **very early** today.
Espera **um pouquinho**.	Wait **a minute**.
Ele saiu **agorinha** mesmo.	He has **just** left.

Remarks:

- Note that the diminutive form in Portuguese is often equivalent to the emphatic form in English.
- Adverbs used in the diminutive form usually have the same meaning as the superlative. e.g. pertinho, cedinho = **bem/muito** perto/cedo (very close/early).

Não estou ouvindo. Fale **mais alto**, por favor.
I can't hear you. Speak **louder**, please.

12.5. Adverbial phrases

If an adverb has more than one word it is called an adverbial phrase. An adverbial phrase normally begins with a preposition followed by a noun or an adverb.

Tip: Practice using adverbial phrases in real, or imaginary situations.

12.5.1. Adverbial phrases of place

Portuguese	English
à direita, à esquerda	on the right, on the left
ao lado (de/do/da)	beside
abaixo (de/do/da), acima (de/do/da)	under, over
em frente (de/do/da)	in front
em cima (de/do/da), embaixo (de/do/da)	on, under
de perto, de longe,	from nearby, from afar
por dentro, por fora	inside, outside
por aqui, por aí	around here, around there

12.5.2. Adverbial phrases of time

Portuguese	English
de dia, de noite	by day, evening, night
de manhã, pela manhã	in the morning
à noite, de noite	in the evening, at night time
à tarde, de tarde	in the afternoon
às vezes	sometimes
de vez em quando	once in a while
uma vez ou outra	every now and then
hoje em dia	nowadays
em breve	soon
em tempo, a tempo	in time, on time

12.5.3. Adverbial phrases of manner

Portuguese	English
a pé	on foot
à vontade	at ease, as much as one wants
ao contrário	on the contrary
aos poucos	bit by bit
em geral	in general
de cor	by heart
de graça	for free
de propósito	on purpose
de repente	suddenly

12.5.4. Adverbial phrases of doubt/certainty

Portuguese	English
com certeza	certainly, sure, definitely
sem dúvida	no doubt
de jeito nenhum	no way
na verdade	in fact

12.5.5. Adverbial phrases of degree

Portuguese	English
ao todo	altogether
a mais	more

Portuguese	English
Ela chegou à noite.	She arrived in the evening.
Voltamos a pé.	We came back on foot.
Fique à vontade.	Feel at ease/home.
Coma à vontade.	Eat as much as you wish.
Às vezes saio.	Sometimes I go out.
Com certeza ele não vem.	He will certainly not come.
Vi seu irmão de longe.	I saw your brother from afar.
Ele parou de repente.	He stopped suddenly.
Estudo de vez em quando.	I study once in a while.
Vamos ao Brasil em breve.	We are going to Brazil soon.

Vamos viajar para a Austrália em breve.
We are going to go to Australia soon.

13. COMPARISONS

In Portuguese there are four degrees of comparison.

degree	Portuguese	English
positive	feliz	happy
comparative	mais feliz	happier
superlative I	o mais feliz	the happiest
superlative II	felicíssimo = muito feliz	extremely/very happy

13.1. Comparative

13.1.1. Normal comparative

The comparative is used when two people or things are compared. The comparative can be used with adjectives and also with adverbs. Adverbs are **invariable** while adjectives are **variable** and can be either masculine or feminine, singular or plural. **The adjective always agrees with the noun it qualifies**.

Portuguese	English
mais .... (do) que	more .... than
menos .... (do) que	less .... than
tanto .... quanto/como	as .... as
tão .... quanto/como	as + adjectives/adverbs .... as
tanto/tanta .... quanto/como	as much + uncountable nouns .... as
tantos/tantas .... quanto/como	as many + countable nouns .... as

Remarks:

- Before numerals, *mais/menos de* (more/less or over/under than) is used. e.g. Ele tem **mais/menos de** 20 anos. (He is **over/under** 20 years old.)
- The expression *a mais* (more), does not require *que* (than). e.g. Ele me deu dez reais **a mais**. (He gave me R$10 **more**.)
- *Do que* (than) can be omitted depending on the context.

Ela é bem **mais alta do que** ele.
She is much **taller than** him.

Portuguese	English
Esta cor é **mais** bonita **do que** aquela.	This color is nicer **than** that one.
Aquele vestido é **menos** extravagante.	That dress is **less** extravagant.
Esta bolsa é **tão** barata **quanto** aquela.	This bag is **as** cheap **as** that one.
Ele trabalha muito **mais do que** ela.	He works much **more than** her.
Ela joga tênis **tão** bem **quanto** ele.	She plays tennis **as well as** him.
Ele ganha **menos do que** ela.	He makes **less than** her.
Ele tem **tantos** amigos **quanto** ela.	He has **as many** friends **as** her.
Eles têm **tanto** trabalho **quanto** vocês.	They have **as much** work **as** you.
Ela mora **mais** perto **do que** nós.	She lives closer **than** us.
Nós chegamos **mais** cedo **do que** ele.	We arrived earlier **than** him.

Exceptions: The following adjectives and adverbs have an irregular form. Therefore, they cannot be used with *mais/menos … do* que (more/less… than) to form the comparative.

Portuguese		English	
positive	comparative	positive	comparative
grande, pequeno	maior(es), menor(es)	big, small	bigger, smaller
bom, ruim	melhor(es), pior(es)	good, bad	better, worse
bem, mal	melhor, pior	well, badly	better, worse

Remark: Adjectives *alto* (high) and *baixo* (low) have also an irregular form *superior/inferior* (superior/inferior) which are followed by *a*, not *do que*. They are normally used when referring to quality or level.

Portuguese	English
Este chá é **melhor do que** aquele.	This tea is **better than** that one.
O tempo está **pior** hoje.	The weather is **worse** today.
Seu escritório é **maior do que** o meu.	Your office is **bigger than** mine.
Aquelas bolsas ali são **menores**.	Those bags over there are **smaller**.
Hoje eu estou um pouco **melhor**.	Today I am a little bit **better**.
Ele fala inglês **melhor do que** eu.	He speaks English **better than** me.
Ela nada **melhor do que** ele.	She swims **better than** him.
Aquela marca é **superior a** esta.	That brand is **superior to** this one.

Ele toca violão **melhor do que** eu.
He plays the guitar **better than** me.

13.1.2. Parallel increase

The parallel increase (the + comparative…the + comparative) is expressed by *quanto mais/menos…+ comparative* in Portuguese.

Portuguese	English
Quanto mais cedo você chegar, **melhor**.	**The sooner** you arrive, **the better**.
Quanto mais rápido, melhor.	**The quicker, the better**.
Quanto menos você falar, **melhor**.	**The less** you speak, **the better**.
Quanto mais o bebê chora, **mais** nervosa ela fica.	**The more** the baby cries, **the more** nervous she becomes.
Quanto mais eu penso, **menos** eu entendo.	**The more** I think, **the less** I understand.
Quanto mais você se irrita, **pior** é.	**The more** you become irritated, **the worse** it is.

13.1.3. Gradual increase and decrease
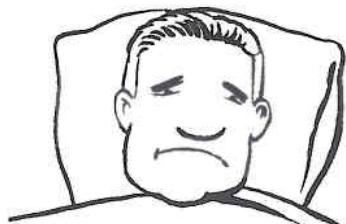
The gradual increase or decrease (two comparatives joined by and) is usually expressed by the expression *cada vez mais/menos* in Portuguese.

Portuguese	English
Está esfriando **cada vez mais**.	It is getting **colder and colder**.
Os ricos estão **cada vez mais ricos**.	The rich are getting **richer and richer**.
O dólar está subindo **cada vez mais**.	The dollar is going up **more and more**.
Ela está comendo **cada vez menos**.	She is eating **less and less**.
Ele está melhorando **cada vez mais**.	He is getting **better and better**.

13.1.4. Comparison of equality/Simile

In Portuguese, the comparison of equality/simile can be expressed by using *as … as …* (*como, feito* or *que nem*).

Portuguese	English
Mudo **como/feito/que nem** uma porta.	**As** dumb **as** a door.
Liso **como/feito/que nem** sabão.	**As** slippery **as** soap.
Magro **como/feito/que nem** um palito.	**As** slim **as** a stick.

Ele está **cada vez melhor**.
He is getting **better and better**.

13.2. Superlative I

The superlative is used when more than two things or people are compared. Adjectives and also some adverbs have superlative forms.

masculine	feminine	English
o(s) mais	a(s) mais	the most
o(s) menos	a(s) menos	the least

Remark: The definite article must always be used when making the superlative.

Portuguese	English
Este é o bar **mais** famoso da cidade.	This is **the most** famous pub in the city.
Os mais bonitos são mais caros.	**The** nicest ones are more expensive.
Moro **na** casa **mais** antiga do bairro.	I live **in the** oldest house in the area.
Este é o hotel **mais** barato da cidade.	This is **the** cheapest hotel in the city.
Ela é **a** garota **mais** alta da turma.	She is **the** tallest girl of the group.
As fotos **mais** bonitas que eu já vi.	**The** nicest photos that I've ever seen.

Exceptions:

positive	masculine	feminine	English
grande	o(s) maior(es)	a(s) maior(es)	big/the biggest
pequeno	o(s) menor(es)	a(s) menor(es)	small/the smallest
bom	o(s) melhor(es)	a(s) melhor(es)	good/the best
ruim	o(s) pior(es)	a(s) pior(es)	bad/the worst

Portuguese	English
Este é **o melhor** vinho que temos.	This is **the best** wine that we have.
Este foi **o pior** filme que já vi.	This was **the worst** movie I've ever seen.
As caixas **maiores** estão ali.	**The biggest** boxes are over there.
Na sua opinião, qual é **a melhor**?	In your opinion, which one is **the best**?
O pior de tudo é eu não poder sair.	**The worst** of all is that I cannot leave.

Ele é **o melhor** aluno da classe.
He is **the best** pupil in the classroom.

13.3. Superlative II

In Portuguese, if you want to say that something is very, or extremely expensive, beautiful, etc. you can express it in two different ways.

By adding the suffixes **íssimo, érrimo** or **imo** to the adjective or adverb.

Portuguese		English	
positive	superlative	positive	superlative
caro/a	caríssimo/a	expensive	**very** expensive
rico/a	riquíssimo/a	rich	**very** rich
interessante	interessantíssimo/a	interesting	**very** interesting
pobre	paupérrimo/a	poor	**very** poor
fácil	facílimo/a	easy	**very** easy

By placing *muito* (very/extremely) before the adjective or adverb.

Portuguese		English	
positive	superlative	positive	superlative
caro/a	**muito** caro/cara	expensive	**very** expensive
rico/a	**muito** rico/rica	rich	**very** rich
interessante	**muito** interessante	interesting	**very** interesting
pobre	**muito** pobre	poor	**very** poor
fácil	**muito** fácil	easy	**very** easy

Remark: *Muito* can be replaced with *super*. Note that if *super* is followed by a word beginning with **h** or **r**, a hyphen must be used. e.g. **muito** caro = **super**caro (very expensive), **super**-honesto (very honest), **super**-resistente (very resistant).

Exception: Adjectives with two superlative forms

Portuguese		English	
bom/boa	**muito** bom/boa = **ótimo**	good	**very** good
ruim	**muito** ruim = **péssimo**	bad	**very** bad

Remark: *Grande/pequeno* (big/small) have superlative forms *máximo/mínimo* (maximum/minimum), which can be used depending on the context. e.g. Vou ficar aqui **no máximo** três dias. (I will stay here **maximum** three days.)

Portuguese	English
Ela está **atrasadíssima** hoje.	She is **very late** today.
Ele mora **pertíssimo** daqui.	He lives **very close** to here.
Nós voltamos **rapidíssimo**.	We came back **very quickly**.
A praia fica **muito** longe daqui.	The beach is **very far** from here.
Eles voltaram **muito** cedo.	They came back **very early**.

14. PRONOUNS

A pronoun is normally used to replace a noun. Sometimes it is also used along with a noun, or it may be used to avoid repetition. In Portuguese there are **six types of pronouns**: personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns.

14.1. Personal pronouns

In Portuguese there are **five types of personal pronouns**: subject, reflexive, prepositional, direct object and indirect object pronouns.

14.1.1. Subject Pronouns

A subject pronoun is used to replace a person or thing who is doing the action and it is the subject of the sentence. Subject pronouns are probably the most frequently used pronouns.
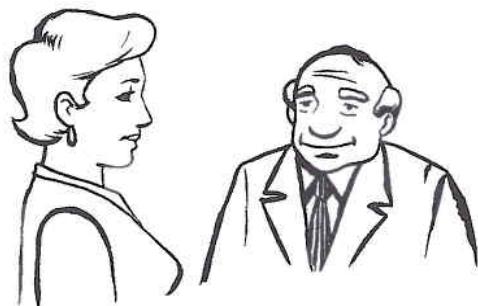
Portuguese		English	
singular	plural	singular	plural
eu	nós = a gente	I	we
você = tu	vocês = vós	you	you
o senhor	os senhores	you (respect)	you (formal)
a senhora	as senhoras	you (respect)	you (formal)
ele	eles	he/it	they (male/mixed)
ela	elas	she/it	they (female)
a gente = nós		we (colloquial)	

Remarks:

- In the spoken language the pronouns *eu/nós* (I/we) are usually omitted, but the other pronouns like *você/vocês, etc.* (you) should not be omitted.
- *Você* and *tu* (you) have the same meaning in Brazil, but *você* is more frequently used than *tu* throughout Brazil. *Tu* is especially used in the south. *Tu* would introduce a new verb form. **Tip:** Use *você* only. It is all you will need.
- *Você* (you) is informal and it is widely used in almost any situation while *o senhor* and *a senhora* (you) are more formal. They are used as a mark of respect, normally when addressing older people (including parents), important people or people you do not know, but even then only in very formal situations.
- There is no neuter gender (it) in Portuguese. *Ele/ela* (he/she/it) are also used to replace things.
- *A gente* (we) is a colloquial form. It is frequently used in speech instead of *nós* (we). Even though it means *we*, it is a singular form and therefore it takes a singular verb while *nós* (we) takes a plural verb.
- The plural form *os senhores/as senhoras* (you) is normally used in formal speech when addressing a group of people.

- *Vós* (you) is an outdated form, which can be found in the Bible and old texts. It is no longer used in Brazil. *Vocês* (you) is used instead.
- *Eles* (they) is used for masculine or masculine + feminine mixed. There is also the female plural form *elas* (they), which is used only to replace feminine nouns (women/animal/things).
- There are a few pronouns, which are only used when talking to a president or to a queen, etc. Most people don't have the opportunity to use them so they are not covered here. They can be found in a good dictionary.

Portuguese	English
Eu falo português.	**I** speak Portuguese.
De onde **você** é?	Where are **you** from?
Elas são do Brasil.	**They** are from Brazil. (women)
Eles estão cansados.	**They** are tired. (men, men/women)
O senhor aceita um café?	Would **you** like a coffee? (mark of respect)
A senhora é estrangeira?	Are **you** a foreigner? (mark of respect)
Nós vamos jantar fora hoje.	**We** will eat out today.
A gente vai jantar fora hoje.	**We** will eat out today. (colloquial)

O senhor vai à reunião?
Are **you** going to the meeting?

14.1.2. Reflexive, reciprocal and pronominal pronouns

Reflexive, reciprocal and pronominal pronouns are identical in Portuguese. Because these pronouns are identical, you don't need to distinguish them. To make the study of these pronouns easier, we will call all of them reflexive pronouns and all the verbs followed by them reflexive verbs. In Portuguese there are verbs like *sentar-se* (to sit down), *encontrar-se* (to meet) and *sentir-se* (to feel) which are followed by the reflexive, reciprocal or pronominal pronoun *se* (oneself) in the infinitive. Reflexive pronouns are used along with reflexive verbs and the action refers back to the subject. Because a reflexive verb in Portuguese is not necessarily reflexive in English and vice-versa, it may appear strange. Once you know a verb is reflexive, it is easy to use one of the three reflexive pronouns *me* (myself), *nos* (ourselves) and *se* (yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves) used in Portuguese. The reciprocal pronoun, *each other,* is used when the action is reciprocal. It is very easy to recognize it as there are at least two people involved in the action. Pronominal pronouns are normally used along with verbs of feeling and the action does not necessarily refer back to the subject. A pronominal pronoun is just part of a verb and it has no function.

Portuguese		English	
singular	plural	singular	plural
me	nos	myself	ourselves/each other
se	se	yourself	yourselves/each other
se	se	himself/itself	themselves/each other
se	se	herself/itself	themselves/each other

Portuguese	English
Divirta-**se**!	Amuse **yourself**.
Ele **se** chama Pedro.	He calls **himself** Pedro. (His name is ...)
Sente-**se**, por favor.	Sit (**yourself**) down, please.
Eu **me** levanto às 7 horas.	I get (**myself**) up at 7:00 o'clock.
Eu não **me** arrependo de nada.	I do not regret (**myself**) anything.
Eu não estou **me** sentindo muito bem.	I am not feeling (**myself**) very well.
Nós **nos** conhecemos no Brasil.	We met **each other** in Brazil.
Eles **se** amam.	They love **each other**.

Remarks:

- The reflexive pronoun can be placed before the verb, or after the verb, provided that there is no negative word, conjunction, preposition, adverb, relative pronoun, interrogative or indefinite pronoun before the verb. **Tip:** Always put the reflexive pronoun before the verb. This avoids learning any complicated rules.
- In Brazil, the placement of reflexive pronouns before the verb is very common in the spoken and in the written language.

- If a sentence begins with a verb, the reflexive pronoun should be placed after the verb linked by a hyphen. e.g. Sente-**se**, por favor. (Sit down, please.)
- If there are two verbs (an auxiliary and a main verb) in a sentence, the reflexive pronoun is placed between them. e.g. Eu não estou **me** sentindo muito bem. (I am not feeling very well.)
- The reflexive pronoun *se* can change the meaning of a verb completely. *Entender* means *to understand*, but *entender-se* means *to get along*.
- In colloquial Portuguese the reflexive pronoun is sometimes omitted. e.g. colloquial: Senta aqui. – formal: Sente-**se** aqui. (Sit down here.)

14.1.2.1. Impersonal use of reflexive pronouns

Sometimes the use of the pronoun *se* is impersonal and it means *one, you, we, they*. Note that in Portuguese the use of the impersonal pronoun is restricted. It is not as widely used as in Spanish, for example.
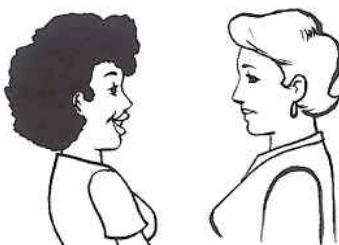
Portuguese	English
No Brasil **come-se** arroz e feijão todos os dias.	In Brazil **they eat** rice and beans every day.
Precisa-se de doméstica.	**We need** a maid.
Como **se escreve** isto em português?	How **do you write** this in Portuguese?
É assim que **deve se fazer**.	This is the way **it should be done**.

14.1.2.2. Emphasizing pronouns used as reflexive pronouns

Emphasizing pronouns are used merely for emphasis. Therefore, they can be omitted without changing the sense of the sentence.

Portuguese	English
Eu **mesma/própria** fiz este bolo.	**I myself** baked this cake.
Ele **mesmo/próprio** me atendeu.	He **himself** took care of me.
Ele só pensa em si **mesmo**.	He thinks only about **himself**.
Ela só se preocupa consigo **mesma**.	She worries only about **herself**.

Remark: *Mesmo(s)/mesma(s)* are equivalent to *próprio(s)/própria(s)*, but the use of *mesmo(s)/mesma(s)* is more common.

Elas **se conhecem** há muito tempo.
They **have known each other** for a long time.

14.1.3. Prepositional pronouns

Prepositional pronouns are pronouns used in conjunction with prepositions.

Portuguese	English
mim	me
você/si/ti	you
o senhor/a senhora	you
ele/ela	him
nós/a gente	us
vocês	you
eles/elas	them

Remark: Prepositional pronouns *ti/si* are normally used only in the written form. *Ti* (you) refers to the pronoun *tu* and *si* (you/him/her/them) refers to the pronouns *você(s), o(s) senhor, a(s) senhora(s), ele(s)* and *ela(s)* (you/he/she).

Prepositional pronouns and the most common prepositions.

com (with)	de (of/from)	em (in/on)	para (for/to)	por (for/by)
comigo	de mim	em mim	para mim	por mim
com você	de você	em você	para você	por você
com o senhor	do senhor	no senhor	para o senhor	pelo senhor
com a senhora	da senhora	na senhora	para a senhora	pela senhora
com ele	dele	nele	para ele	por ele
com ela	dela	nela	para ela	por ela
com a gente	da gente	na gente	para a gente	pela gente
conosco	de nós	em nós	para nós	por nós
com vocês	de vocês	em vocês	para vocês	por vocês
com eles	deles	neles	para eles	por eles
com elas	delas	nelas	para elas	por elas

Remarks:

- Some prepositional pronouns are contracted with the preposition.
- Contractions *contigo/consigo* are normally used only in the written form. *Contigo* (with you) refers to the pronoun *tu*; *consigo* (with you/him/her/them) refers to the pronouns *você(s), o(s) senhor, a(s)senhora(s), ele(s)* and *ela(s)*.

Portuguese	English
Pensei **em você** agorinha mesmo.	I thought **about you** just now.
Senta aqui perto **de mim**.	Sit down here close **to me**. (colloquial)
Trouxe um presente **para você**.	I brought a present **for you**.
Ele perguntou **por vocês**.	He asked **about you**.
Quem vai **comigo**?	Who is going **with me**?

14.1.4. Direct object pronouns

A direct object pronoun is normally used to replace a direct object in a sentence in order to avoid repetition. A direct object can be a noun (person or thing). In Brazil, the direct object pronoun is usually placed before the verb. It can also be placed after the verb, provided that there is no negative word, adverb, conjunction, preposition, relative pronoun, interrogative or indefinite pronoun before the verb.

Tip: Always put the direct object pronoun before the verb. This avoids learning any complicated rules.
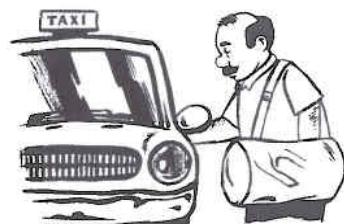
Portuguese	English
me	me
o/a/lo/la/te	you
o/lo	him/it
a/la	her/it
nos	us
os/los/nos	you/them
as/las/nas	you/them

Remark: Some direct object pronouns are identical, but in context you will see the difference.

The recipe below is a good illustration of the use of the direct object pronoun. Note that the noun is replaced with the direct object pronoun in order to avoid repetition.

Portuguese	English
Banana frita	**Fried banana**
Descasque **as bananas**.	Peel **the bananas**.
Corte-**as** ao meio.	Cut **them** in half.
Frite-**as** até dourar.	Fry **them** until golden brown.
Coloque-**as** num prato de sobremesa.	Put **them** on a dessert plate.
Polvilhe-**as** com canela e açúcar.	Sprinkle **them** with cinnamon and sugar.
Sirva-**as** quente.	Serve **them** warm.

Remark: The direct object pronoun is always placed after the verb when the imperative is used, provided that the sentence is not negative. A sentence should never begin with an object pronoun.

Pensei que ela viesse **me** buscar.
I thought she would come to pick **me** up.

14.1.4.1. Use of direct object pronouns me, te, nos, o(s), a(s)

In Brazil, the direct object pronoun is normally not used correctly in speech, but it is used correctly in the written language (newspapers/magazines, etc.). The colloquial form uses subject pronouns instead of direct object pronouns. You should be familiar with both forms as you will see and hear them both.

a) Correct form (written/spoken)

Portuguese	English
Eu o vi, mas ele não me viu.	I saw him, but he did not see me.
Quem o levou ao aeroporto?	Who took you to the airport?
De onde você nos conhece?	Where do you know us from?
Nós a encontramos no clube.	We met her at the club.
Eu os deixei na rodoviária.	I dropped them at the bus station.
Onde você comprou este livro?	Where did you buy this book?
Comprei-o numa livraria.	I bought it in a bookshop.
Eu o comprei numa livraria.	I bought it in a bookshop.

b) Colloquial form (spoken)

Portuguese	English
Eu vi ele, mas ele não me viu.	I saw him (literally he), but he didn't see me.
Quem te levou ao aeroporto?	Who took you to the airport?
Quem levou você ao aeroporto?	Who took you to the airport?
De onde você conhece a gente?	Where do you know us from?
Nós encontramos ela no clube.	We met her (literally she) at the club.
Eu deixei eles na rodoviária.	I dropped them (literally they) at the station.
Onde você comprou este livro?	Where did you buy this book?
Comprei numa livraria.	I bought (it) in a bookshop.

Remarks:

- The subject pronouns *ele(s)/ela(s)* (he/she/it/they) are used instead of direct object pronouns *o(s)/a(s)* (him/her/it/them) in colloquial Portuguese. This form is wrong, even though it is often used in speech by well-educated people.
- Even though the direct object pronoun *te* (you) refers to the subject pronoun *tu* (you), it is widely used when referring to the subject pronoun *você* (you) instead of the direct object pronoun *o/a* (you). Its use is easier and acceptable in speech. (See 2nd example, part b.)
- The subject pronoun *você/vocês* (you) is acceptable when referring to the subject pronouns *você/vocês* (you), but note that they are always placed after the verb. (See 2nd example, part b.)
- *A gente* (we/us) is a colloquial form. It is also widely used instead of *nós/nos* (we/us) in speech and placed after the verb. (See 3rd example, part b.)

- In Portuguese, the direct object pronoun is optional when it refers to things previously mentioned. (See 6th example, part b.). In fact, direct object pronouns are often omitted in Portuguese in many sentences in which they would be required in English.
- **Tip:** It is easy to avoid mistakes by **not** replacing the noun with a pronoun.

Portuguese	English	form
Eu vi **Pedro/Maria**.	I saw **Peter/Mary**.	using noun
Eu vi **ele/ela**.	I saw **he/she**. (literally)	wrong form
Eu **o/a** vi.	I saw **him/her**.	correct form

14.1.4.2. Use of direct object pronouns lo(s), la(s)

These forms are only used after an infinitive verb, but the **r** must be dropped and replaced with a hyphen. Normally there are two verbs in the sentence, the main verb and the infinitive form.

a) Correct Form (written/spoken)

Portuguese	English
Prazer em conhecê-**lo**.	(It is) a pleasure to meet **you**.
Nós vamos buscá-**los** no aeroporto.	We will pick **you** up at the airport.
Vou pegá-**las** e já volto.	I will fetch **them** and will be right back.
Quero apresentá-**la** a minha família.	I want to introduce **you** to my family.

b) Colloquial form (spoken)

Portuguese	English
Prazer **te** conhecer.	(It is) a pleasure to meet **you**.
Vou buscar **vocês** no aeroporto.	I will pick **you** up at the airport.
Vou pegar **elas** e já volto.	I will fetch **them** (literally **they**) and will be right back.
Quero **te** apresentar a minha família.	I want to introduce **you** to my family.
Quero apresentar **você** a minha família.	I want to introduce **you** to my family.

14.1.4.3. Use of direct object pronouns no(s), na(s)

Nowadays these direct object pronouns are rarely used even in the written form. They should normally be used after nasal sounds like **m/õe**.
Tip: To avoid this form, always place the pronoun before the verb or do not replace the noun with a direct object pronoun at all as in the following examples.

Portuguese		English
Eles viram **Pedro**.	Eles viram-**no**.	They saw **Peter/him**.
Eles viram **seu irmão**.	Eles viram-**no**.	They saw **your brother/him**.
Eles **o** viram.	Eles viram-**no**.	They saw **him**.

14.1.5. Indirect object pronouns

An indirect object pronoun is normally used to replace an indirect object in a sentence in order to avoid repetition. There are **two types of indirect object pronouns** and both are frequently used. In Brazil, the indirect object pronoun is usually placed before the verb, but it can also be placed after the verb, provided that there is no negative word, conjunction, preposition, adverb, relative pronoun, interrogative or indefinite pronoun before the verb. In Portuguese there are verbs like *telefonar* (to call), *contar* (to tell), *mostrar* (to show), etc. which are different from English. They are used together with the preposition *para* or *a* and require indirect object pronouns.

Tip: Always put the indirect object pronoun before the verb. This avoids learning complicated rules.

Portuguese			English	
me	para mim	pra mim	me	to me
te/lhe	para você	pra você	you	to you
lhe	para o senhor	pro senhor	you	to you
lhe	para a senhora	pra senhora	you	to you
lhe	para ele	pra ele	him/it	to him/it
lhe	para ela	pra ela	her/it	to her/it
nos	para nós	pra nós	us	to us
lhes	para vocês	pra vocês	you	to you
lhes	para eles	pra eles	them	to them
lhes	para elas	pra elas	them	to them

Remarks:

- Even though the indirect object pronoun *te* (you) refers to the subject pronoun *tu* (you), it is widely used when referring to the subject pronoun *você* (you) instead of the indirect object pronoun *lhe* (you). Its use is easier and acceptable in speech.
- The preposition *para* (to) can be replaced by the preposition *a* (to). Both have the same meaning, but *para* is more frequently used and even shortened to *pra* in the spoken language while *a* is more frequently used in the written language.
- It is not correct to begin a sentence with a indirect object pronoun, but in colloquial Portuguese this rule is ignored and it is common to hear "**Me** dá o leite." instead of "Dê-**me** o leite." (Pass me the milk.)
- If a verb like *dar* (to give) requires both a direct and an indirect object in the same sentence, note that in Brazil only one object (direct or indirect) is usually replaced. In the past, both pronouns could be contracted, but this is an outdated form and out of use in Brazil. See the following examples, which use the form used today.

Portuguese	English
Pedro deu **um presente a Maria**.	Pedro gave **a present to Mary**.
Pedro deu um presente **a/para ela**.	Pedro gave a present **to her**.
Pedro **lhe** deu um presente.	Pedro gave **her** a present.
Pedro **o** deu a Maria.	Pedro gave **it** to Mary.

a) Examples without para

Portuguese	English
Alguém **me** telefonou?	Has anyone called **me**?
Ela **lhe/te** deu o recado?	Has she given **you** the message?
Vou **lhes** escrever uma carta.	I will write **them** a letter.
Dê-**me** o leite.	Pass **me** the milk.

b) Examples with para

Portuguese	English
Alguém telefonou **para/pra mim**?	Has anyone called **me**?
Ela deu o recado **para/pra você**?	Has she given the message **to you**?
Vou escrever uma carta **para/pra eles**.	I will write a letter **to them**.
Dê o leite **para/pra mim**.	Pass the milk **to me**.

Remarks:

- Note that *para* + *pronoun* must be placed after the verb.
- Both forms are identical in meaning and are frequently used.
  Tip: Practice only the form you find easiest.

Você pode fazer um favor **pra mim**?
Can you do **me** a favor?

14.2. Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns are used to show ownership. In Portuguese, possessive pronouns refer to the possessor and to the thing possessed at the same time. Exceptions are possessive pronouns used along with the preposition *de* (of) as in *dele(s)*, *do senhor*, *da gente*, *de vocês* which refer to the possessor and not to the thing possessed. Note that these pronouns are placed after the noun, which must be preceded by the definite article. Everything he/she possesses is his/hers. (dele/dela), no matter whether the noun is masculine, feminine, singular or plural. Keep in mind that possessive pronouns in Portuguese vary in gender and in number.

masculine	feminine	English
meu(s)	minha(s)	my/mine = of mine
seu(s) = teu(s)	sua(s) = tua(s)	your/yours = of yours
seu(s) = do senhor	sua(s) = do senhor	your/yours = of yours
seu(s) = da senhora	sua(s) = da senhora	your/yours = of yours
seu(s) = dele	sua(s) = dele	his/his, it/its = of him/it
seu(s) = dela	sua(s) = dela	her/hers, it/its = of hers/it
nosso(s) = da gente	nossa(s) = da gente	our/ours = of ours
seu(s) = de vocês	sua(s) = de vocês	your/yours = of yours
seu(s) = deles	sua(s) = deles	their/theirs = of theirs
seu(s) = delas	sua(s) = delas	their/theirs = of theirs

Remarks:

- Note that possessive and adjective pronouns are identical in Portuguese.
- The pronouns *teu(s)/tua(s)* (your/yours) refer to the personal pronoun *tu* (you) and sometimes they are used in colloquial Portuguese instead of *seu(s)/sua(s)* (your/yours), which refers to the pronoun *você* (you).
- Note that everything a thing or an animal possesses is *dele/dela* (his/hers/its).
- In ordinary conversation *seu/sua* (his/her) are replaced by *dele/dela* (his/her). The use of *seu/sua* (his/her) is mainly confined to the written language because *seu/sua* (his/her) might easily be mistaken by *seu/sua* (your).

Portuguese	English
(Os) meus pais são brasileiros.	My parents are Brazilian.
O pai dele é brasileiro. (spoken) Seu pai é brasileiro. (written)	His father is Brazilian.
A mãe dele é brasileira. (spoken) Sua mãe é brasileira. (written)	His mother is Brazilian.
Os pais dele são brasileiros. (spoken) Seus pais são brasileiros. (written)	His parents are Brazilian.

Possessive pronouns used as possessive adjectives and nouns.

Portuguese	English
Este livro é **meu**.	This book is **mine**.
Este é **meu** livro.	This is **my** book.

The possessive pronoun is usually placed before a noun, but sometimes it is placed after a noun.

masculine	feminine	English
(o) **meu** amigo	(a) **minha** amiga	**my** male/female friend
um amigo **meu**	uma amiga **minha**	a male/female friend **of mine**

In Portuguese, the possessive pronoun is usually preceded by the definite article, which is optional in most of the cases. The definite article is normally used for emphasis.

Remark: If a noun is omitted in a sentence and the speaker does not want to repeat the noun again, the definite article must precede the possessive pronoun.

Portuguese	English
(O) **meu** livro está na mesa. E **o seu**?	**My** book is on the table. And **yours**?
(A) **minha** caneta é azul. E **a sua**?	**My** pen is blue. And **yours**?

In Portuguese parts of the body and articles of clothes are usually used with the definite article, not with the possessive pronoun as in English.

Portuguese	English
Ele quebrou **a** perna.	He broke **his** leg.
Cortei **o** dedo.	I cut **my** finger.
Ela tirou **o** casaco.	She took off **her** coat.

As in English, the preposition *of* (de/do/da) is used for possession.

Portuguese	English	
A bicicleta **do** menino.	The boy's bicycle.	The bicycle **of the** boy.
O filho **da** professora.	The teacher's son.	The son **of the** teacher.
O estacionamento **da** loja.	The store's car park.	The car park **of the** store.
Os funcionários **do** banco.	The bank's employees.	The employees **of the** bank.

Onde está **o meu** livro?
Where is **my** book?

14.3. Demonstrative pronouns
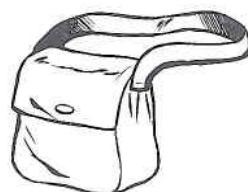
Demonstrative pronouns and demonstrative adjectives are identical in Portuguese. **Demonstrative pronouns are used to point out a thing or person specifically.** In Portuguese, some demonstrative pronouns vary in gender (masculine/feminine) and in number (singular/plural) and others are invariable. **Variable** demonstrative pronouns are always followed by a noun while **invariable** demonstrative pronouns are not. The variable demonstrative pronouns always agree with the noun they refer to.

masculine	feminine	invariable	English
este(s)	esta(s)	isto	this/these
esse(s)	essa(s)	isso	this/these
aquele(s)	aquela(s)	aquilo	that/those

Remarks:

- *Este(s)/esta(s)/isto* (this), normally followed by *aqui* (here), are used to point out things or people **near the speaker**.
- *Esse(s)/essa(s)/isso* (this) are normally followed by *aí* (there near you) and are used to point out things or people **near the person the speaker is talking to**.
- *Aquele(s)/aquela(s)/aquilo* (that) normally followed by *ali/lá* (there/over there) are used to point out things or people **far from both the speaker and the person the speaker is talking to**.
- *Isto/isso/aquilo* (this/this/that) are **invariable** and are not followed by nouns. They are used to substitute nouns, that is, when the speaker does not know or he does not want to mention the name of the object in question.
- In Portuguese, the difference between *este/esta/isto* and *esse/essa/isso* is minimal. **Tip:** If you have difficulty distinguishing both forms, you can simply use *este(s)/esta(s)/isto* for all situations in which *esse(s)/essa(s)/isso* would usually be required.

Portuguese	English
Este livro (aqui) é seu?	Is **this book** (here) yours?
De quem é **essa caneta** aí?	Whose pen is **that** (with you)?
Quero **aquelas cartas** ali.	I want **those letters** over there.
O que é **isto/aquilo**?	What is **this/that**?

Quanto custa **esta** bolsa?
How much does **this** bag cost?

14.3.1. Demonstrative pronouns and prepositions

There are verbs, which are followed by prepositions. If a verb is followed by the preposition *de* or *em* and you want to make a sentence using a demonstrative pronoun, you have to use the contractions showed in the table below. In Portuguese, *gostar* (to like), for example, is a verb followed by the preposition *de*. If this preposition is omitted, the sentence is wrong.

14.3.1.1. Demonstrative pronouns and the preposition de

preposition + pronoun	masculine	feminine	invariable	English
de + este/esta/isto	deste(s)	desta(s)	disto	this/these
de + esse/essa/isso	desse(s)	dessa(s)	disso	this/these
de + aquele/aquela/aquilo	daquele(s)	daquela(s)	daquilo	that/those

14.3.1.2. Demonstrative pronouns and the preposition em

preposition + pronoun	masculine	feminine	invariable	English
em + este/esta/isto	neste(s)	nesta(s)	nisto	in/on/at
em + esse/essa/isso	nesse(s)	nessa(s)	nisso	this/these
em + aquele/aquela/aquilo	naquele(s)	naquela(s)	naquilo	that/those

Remark: The difference between *neste/nesta/nisto* and *nesse/nessa/nisso*, *deste/desta/disto* and *desse/dessa/disso* is minimal.
Tip: If you have difficulty distinguishing both forms, you can simply use the first form (*neste/nesta/nisto - deste/desta/disto*) for all situations in which the second one (*nesse/nessa/nisso - desse/dessa/disso*) would usually be required.

Portuguese	English
Gosto **deste** apartamento.	I like **this** apartment.
Não gosto **desta** cerveja.	I do not like **this** beer.
O senhor precisa **daquela** cadeira?	Do you need **that** chair?
Preciso **daquelas** cartas para amanhã.	I need **those** letters by tomorrow.
Não preciso mais **disto**.	I no longer need **this**.
Não estou interessado **nisto**.	I am not interested **in this**.
Você mora **neste** prédio?	Do you live **in this** building?
Ela trabalha **naquela** loja ali.	She works **in that** shop over there.

Preciso **desta** camisa amanhã cedo.
I need **this** shirt tomorrow morning.

14.4. Relative pronouns

A relative pronoun is **used to refer back to an earlier noun or pronoun**. It describes a noun in order to distinguish it from other nouns, that is, to make clear which person, or thing, we are talking about. In Portuguese relative pronouns can be **variable** and **invariable**. Invariable pronouns are more frequently used than variable pronouns. Variable pronouns are more difficult and normally used in the written language.

14.4.1. Invariable relative pronouns

Portuguese	English
que	which, that
onde	where
de/com/para quem	of/with/to whom

14.4.2. Variable relative pronouns

masculine		feminine		English
singular	plural	singular	plural	invariable
o qual	os quais	a qual	as quais	which, that
no qual	nos quais	na qual	nas quais	where, in which
do qual	dos quais	da qual	das quais	of whom
com o qual	com os quais	com a qual	com as quais	with whom
para o qual	para os quais	para os quais	para as quais	to whom
cujo	cujos	cuja	cujas	whose

Remarks:

- *Que* (which) is the most frequently used relative pronoun.
- *Onde* (where) is only used for places.
- *Quem* (whom) refers to people and it is always preceded by a preposition.
- *Qual/quais* (which), used as relative pronouns, are always preceded by the definite article or a preposition.
- *Cujo(s)/cuja(s)* (whose) show ownership and always match the following noun.

Portuguese	English
O livro **que/o qual** comprei.	The book **that/which** I bought.
A empresa **onde/na qual** trabalho.	The company **where/in which** I work.
A moça **com quem/com a qual** falei.	The lady **with whom** I spoke to.
O menino **cuja** mãe está doente.	The boy **whose** mother is sick.

Este é o presente que eu ganhei.
This is the gift that I received.

14.5. Interrogative pronouns (question words)

Interrogative pronouns and some adverbs are usually used to make questions.

Portuguese	English
como	how, what
qual, quais	which, what
quando	when
quanto, quanta	how much (male/female)
quantos, quantas	how many (male/female)
onde	**where**
de onde	from where
para onde, aonde	to where
que	**what**
o que	what
de que, do que	what about
em que, no que	what about
para que	what for
por que	why
quem	**who**
com quem	with whom
de quem	whose, about whom
em quem	on, in whom
para quem	to whom

Remarks:

- *Que* and *qual* are the same word (what) in English and are easily confused, but *que* is always followed by a noun while *qual* is followed by a subject pronoun or the verb *to be* (which is often omitted). *Qual* (which) usually implies a choice.
- Question words with *que* (o que, por que, etc.) have a circumflex accent (^) if they stand alone at the end of a sentence. e.g. Não. Por quê? (No. Why?)
- Note that in Portuguese *é que* (is it that) is often used after question words, merely for emphasis. If omitted, it does not change the sense of the sentence. e.g. O que (**é que**) você está fazendo? (What (**is it that**) you are doing?)
- Unlike English, in Portuguese it is not possible to move a preposition to the end of the sentence. e.g. **Com quem** você vai? (**Whom** are you going **with**?)

Portuguese	English
Como/Qual é seu nome?	**What** is your name?
Que dia é hoje?	**What** day is today?
O que (é que) você quer?	**What** (is it that/do) you want?
Qual (dos dois) você prefere?	**Which one** (of them) do you prefer?
Quem é aquele senhor?	**Who** is that gentleman?
Com quem vocês vão?	**With whom** are you going?

14.6. Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns are words used to refer to people or things **non-specifically**. Some indefinite pronouns are **variable** while others are **invariable**. As there are many indefinite pronouns, they are grouped to make their study easier.

Portuguese		English	
alguém	ninguém	somebody/anybody	nobody/no one
alguma coisa	nada	something/anything	nothing/anything
algum/alguns	nenhum	some/any (male)	none/any (male)
alguma/algumas	nenhuma	some/any (female)	none/any (female)

Remarks:

- *Alguém/ninguém* (somebody/nobody) refer to people only.
- *Algum/alguns/alguma(s)/nenhum/nenhuma* (any/some/none) refer to things or people and are always followed by a noun.
- *Alguém/algum/alguns/alguma(s)/alguma coisa* are used in positive sentences while *ninguém/nenhum/nenhuma/nada* are used in negative sentences.
- *Ninguém/nenhum/nenhuma/nada* (nobody/no one/nothing) sometimes use a double negative, that is, the verb is in the negative form. e.g. **Não** tem **ninguém** em casa. (There is nobody at home.) – **Não** falei **nada**. (I did not say anything.)

Portuguese	English
bastante	a lot
mais, menos	more, less
tal, tais	such
muito(s), muita(s)	much, many
pouco(s), pouca(s)	little, few
tanto(s), tanta(s)	so much, many
certo(s), certa(s)	certain
outro(s), outra(s)	another, others
vários, várias	several
uns, umas	some, about, around

Remarks:
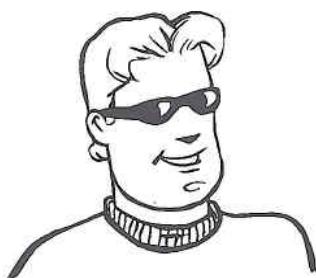
- *Muito/muita* (much), *pouco/pouca* (little) and *tanto/tanta* (so much) are used for **uncountable nouns**.
- *Muitos/muitas* (many), *poucos/poucas* (few) and *tantos/tantas* (so many) are **used for countable nouns**.
- Note that some nouns are **countable in English**, but **uncountable in Portuguese**. e.g. *muito dinheiro* (a lot of money), *muita gente* (a lot of people)

Portuguese	English
cada (um/uma)	each, every (one)
qualquer (um/uma)	any, either (one)
tudo	everything
todo, toda = inteiro, inteira	whole, entire
todos (os), todas (as)	all, every

Remarks:

- Sometimes *cada* (each) and *todos/todas* (every) have the same meaning in English and for this reason they are easily confused.
- Qualquer (any) means *no particular one.*
- *Todo/toda* can be placed before or after the noun. e.g. Ele trabalhou **todo o dia** = **o dia todo**. (He worked **the whole day**.)
- *Todos/todas* are sometimes replaced with *todo/toda* in colloquial Portuguese. e.g. Eu caminho **todo** dia. (instead of **todos os** dias) (I walk every day.)

Portuguese	English
Alguém me telefonou?	Has **anyone** called me?
Ninguém falou **nada**.	**Nobody** said **anything**.
Você quer beber **alguma coisa**?	Would you like **something** to drink?
Eles têm **alguns** amigos brasileiros.	They have **some** Brazilian friends.
Temos **muito** trabalho hoje.	We have **a lot of** work today.
Geralmente não tomo **muita** cerveja.	Usually I do not drink **much** beer.
Ele não dormiu a noite **toda/inteira**.	He did not sleep **the whole** night.
Todos os turistas são americanos.	**All** the tourists are American.
Vocês entenderam **tudo**?	Did you understand **everything**?
Quanto custa **cada** cartão postal?	How much does **each** postcard cost?
Você pode ir a **qualquer** banco.	You can go to **any** bank.
Você pode me mostrar **outra** cor?	Can you show me **another** color?
Certas coisas ele nunca vai entender.	**Certain** things he will never understand.
Havia **tanta** gente lá.	There were **so many** people there.
Eles têm **muito** dinheiro.	They have **a lot of** money.

Alguém aqui fala inglês?
Does **anybody** here speak English?
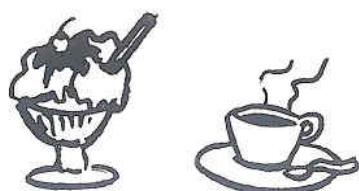
15. CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions, also called connecting words, are used to connect words, phrases, clauses and sentences.

Portuguese	English
apesar de	despite, in spite of
caso	in case
como	because, like, as
contudo	nevertheless
e	and
embora	in spite of, even though
enquanto	as long as
então	then
entretanto	however
logo	therefore
mas	but
não...nem = não...nem...nem	neither...nor
ou	or
pois	then
por isso	for this reason
porém	but, however
porque	because, why
portanto	therefore
quando	when
que	that
se	if
senão	otherwise

Remark: In Portuguese the conjunction *que* (that) is more frequently used than in English. In sentences like *Ele acha/sabe/disse que...* (He thinks/knows/said that...) the conjunction *que* (that), cannot be omitted.

Portuguese	English
Ele vai, **mas** eu não vou.	He is going, **but** I am not.
Eu acho **que** ele está doente.	I think **that** he is sick.
Estava chovendo **quando** saí de casa.	It was raining **when** I left home.
O livro **e** a caneta estão na mesa.	The book **and** the pen are on the table.

Eu pedi um sorvete **e** um cafezinho.
I ordered an ice cream **and** a coffee.

15.1. Conjunctions + *que* (that)

Conjunctions + *que* usually introduce the subjunctive mood.

Portuguese	English
a menos que	unless
a não ser que	unless
ainda que	even if
antes que	before
assim que	as soon as
contanto que	provided that
depois que	after
desde que	provided that
já que	since
logo que	as soon as
mesmo que	even if
nem que	even if
para que	in order to
por mais que	no matter how (much)
sempre que	always when
uma vez que	since

Portuguese	English
Eu não vou à festa **mesmo que** eles me convidem.	I will not go to the party **even if** they invite me.
Vamos embora **assim que** eles chegarem.	We are going to leave **as soon as** they arrive.
Você pode ficar aqui **desde que** você não me atrapalhe.	You can stay here **provided that** you don't disturb me.
Por mais que ele trabalhe, ele não fica rico.	**No matter how much** he works, he does not get rich.
Eu vou falar com ela **depois que** eles saírem.	I will talk to her **after** they have left.
Eu vou com você **a não ser que** chova.	I will go with you **unless** it rains.

Vou escrever para ela **mesmo que** ela não me responda.
I will write to her **even if** she does not reply to me.

16. PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are words, which are used before a noun or pronoun to indicate its place, position, or time. Unlike in English, verbs used after prepositions must be in the infinitive, not in the gerund form. e.g. Antes de **sair**. (Before **leaving**.) A preposition can be required in Portuguese, but not in English, and vice-versa and not always the same preposition is required. The use of prepositions can vary from language to language and this is difficult to master. Only with some practice will you use prepositions correctly.

Portuguese	English
a	to, for, at
ante, perante	before
após	after
até	till/until/by
com	with
como	as
conforme	according to
contra	against
de	of, from, about, by
desde	since, from
durante	during, for
em	in, at, on
entre	between, among
para	to, for, in order to
per	per
por	for, through, by, after, per
segundo	according to
sem	without
sob	under
sobre	on, about

Remarks:

- Practice only the prepositions you will need and try to learn the most important verbs and expressions along with their prepositions.
- Remember that prepositions usually vary in gender and in number if they are followed by nouns. Refer back to 7.1.1 and 7.2.1 (The definite/indefinite article and prepositions), on page 27-28.
- The preposition *por* has several different meanings and it is used with some verbs, in some adverbial or prepositional phrases and in idiomatic expressions.
- The prepositions *para* and *por* are often confused because they sometimes have the same meaning. Generally speaking *para* indicates direction.

Portuguese	English
Eles moram **em** São Paulo.	They live **in** São Paulo.
Tomo café **sem** açúcar.	I drink coffee **without** sugar.
O gerente **do** hotel é meu amigo.	The manager **of the** hotel is my friend.
Quando você vai **para o** Brasil?	When are you going **to** Brazil?
Nós viemos **de** carro.	We came **by** car.
Quanto você pagou **por esta** blusa?	How much did you pay **for this** blouse?
Obrigado **pela** informação.	Thanks **for the** information.
Vamos viajar (**por**) duas semanas.	We are going to travel **for** two weeks.
Eles vivem **de** aluguel.	They live **on** rent. (on the rent they receive)

Remark: When *por* (for) is used for a period of time, it is usually omitted.

16.1. Prepositional phrases

If a preposition has more than one word it is called a prepositional phrase. A prepositional phrase is an expression you need to memorize. Keep in mind that some prepositions can vary in gender (masculine/feminine) or in number (singular/plural) depending on the context.

Portuguese	English
a fim de	in order to
a partir de	from…(onwards)
a respeito de	about
ao lado de	beside, close to
abaixo de	under
acima de	over, above
além de	besides, after, beyond
antes de	before
apesar de	in spite of
atrás de	behind
através de	through
cerca de	around, about
de acordo com	according to
debaixo de	under
de cima de	from top, from above
dentro de	inside, within, in
depois de	after
devido a	due to
embaixo de	under
em cima de	on, on top of
em frente de/a	in front of
em vez de	instead of
fora de	outside
graças a	thanks to

Portuguese	English
junto a/de	by the, alongside
longe de	far from
perto de	near, close to
por baixo de	under
por causa de	because, due to
por cima de	over
por trás de	behind
por volta de	around, about
próximo a/de	close to

Portuguese	English
Vamos para casa **depois da** aula.	We are going home **after the** lesson.
A escola fica **perto do** banco.	The school is **close to the** bank.
Não fui à aula **por causa da** chuva.	I didn't go to class **because of the** rain.
Quem é aquele rapaz **atrás de** você?	Who is that guy **behind** you?
Graças a Deus não aconteceu nada.	**Thank** God nothing happened.

O jornal está **em cima da** mesa.
The newspaper is **on the** table.

17. EXCLAMATION

An exclamation, also called an interjection, is a word used to express exclamation or an emotional feeling.

Portuguese	English
Nossa! Tenho que ir (embora).	**Gosh!** I have to leave now.
Puxa! Que caro, **heim!**	**Wow!** How expensive it is!
Ei! Moço!	**Hey!** Young man!
Oba! Passei no exame!	**Wow!** I have passed the examination!
Ai! Que dor!	**Ouch!** That hurts!
Ah! Que bom!	**Ah!** Great!

Remarks:

- Depending on the intonation, an interjection can express different feelings.
- Sometimes it is difficult to translate an interjection to another language, but in a context you will always understand what is meant.
- In both Portuguese and English an exclamation is followed by an exclamation mark.

Nossa! Estou atrasadíssimo.
Gosh! I am extremely late.

18. NUMERALS

Arabic	cardinal	ordinal	Roman
0	zero		
1	um, uma	primeiro/a	I
2	dois, duas	segundo/a	II
3	três	terceiro/a	III
4	quatro	quarto/a	IV
5	cinco	quinto/a	V
6	seis	sexto/a	VI
7	sete	sétimo/a	VII
8	oito	oitavo/a	VIII
9	nove	nono/a	IX
10	dez	décimo/a	X
11	onze	décimo/a primeiro/a	XI
12	doze	décimo/a segundo/a	XII
13	treze	décimo/a terceiro/a	XIII
14	catorze, quatorze	décimo/a quarto/a	XIV
15	quinze	décimo/a quinto/a	XV
16	dezesseis	décimo/a sexto/a	XVI
17	dezessete	décimo/a sétimo/a	XVII
18	dezoito	décimo/a oitavo/a	XVIII
19	dezenove	décimo/a nono/a	XIX
20	vinte	vigésimo/a	XX
21	vinte e um/uma	vigésimo/a primeiro/a	XXI
22	vinte e dois/duas	vigésimo/a segundo/a	XXII
30	trinta	trigésimo/a	XXX
40	quarenta	quadragésimo/a	
50	cinqüenta	qüinquagésimo/a	
60	sessenta	sexagésimo/a	
70	setenta	septuagésimo/a	
80	oitenta	octogésimo/a	
90	noventa	nonagésimo/a	
100	cem	centésimo/a	
101	cento e um		
200	duzentos/as		
300	trezentos/as		
400	quatrocentos/as		
500	quinhentos/as		
600	seiscentos/as		
700	setecentos/as		
800	oitocentos/as		
900	novecentos/as		
1.000	mil, um mil	milésimo/a	
1.000.000	um milhão		

18.1. General remarks about numerals

18.1.1. Masculine and feminine numbers

In Portuguese, the numbers 1, 2 and from 200 to 900 (ending in **entos**) are feminine when they are followed by a feminine noun, otherwise the masculine form is used.

Portuguese	English
um lápis	**one/a** pencil
dois livros	**two** books
trezentos dólares	**three hundred** dollars
página 2 (**dois**)	page 2 (**two**)
dois minutos	**two** minutes

Portuguese	English
uma caneta	**one/a** pen
duas cervejas	**two** beers
trezentas pessoas	**three hundred** people
duas páginas	**two** pages
duas horas	**two** hours, **two** o'clock

18.1.2. Number 6

In Brazil, when saying telephone numbers, usually *meia* (half a dozen) is used for number 6 instead of *seis* (six). e.g. Tel. 2654-0266 (dois, *meia,* cinco, quatro, zero, dois, *meia, meia*).

18.1.3. Number 100

Cem is only used for 100. (From 101 on, *cento* must be used.)

18.1.4. Number 1000

Mil (one thousand) has no plural form and no preposition is required when it is followed by a noun. *Um* before *mil* is commonly used when writing checks, but its use is optional. e.g. mil reais = **um** mil reais (one thousand reais)

Portuguese	English
1000 (**mil**) convidados	1000 guests
2000 (**dois mil**) habitantes	2000 inhabitants
2000 (**duas mil**) pessoas	2000 people

18.1.5. Million, billion and trillion

Milhão, bilhão and *trilhão* (million/billion/trillion) are masculine, have a plural form and the preposition *de* (of) is required when they are followed by a noun.

Portuguese	English
um **milhão de** habitantes	one **million** inhabitants
cinco **milhões de** habitantes	five **million** inhabitants
um **bilhão de** dólares	one **billion** dollars
dois **bilhões de** dólares	two **billion** dollars

18.1.6. Use of the conjunction *e* (and)

The word *e* (and) is used between the tens (28 = vinte e oito) and the hundreds (140 = cento e quarenta). It is also used when there is no hundred (1010 = mil e dez), no tens (2001 = dois mil e um) or only zeros (1900 = mil e novecentos).

Portuguese		English
1008	mil e oito	one thousand **and** eight
1098	mil e noventa e oito	one thousand **and** ninety-eight
1900	mil e novecentos	one thousand nine hundred
1908	mil novecentos e oito	one thousand nine hundred **and** eight
1998	mil novecentos e noventa e oito	one thousand nine hundred **and** ninety-eight

Remarks:

- Note that a point and not a comma is used to separate the thousands in Portuguese. e.g. US$5.300,00 (US$5,300.00).
- Numbers referring to years are not read as in English. e.g. 1999 = mil novecentos e noventa e nove (one thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine).

18.1.7. Use of ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers can be either masculine or feminine (primeiro/primeira) in gender, and singular or plural (primeiros/primeiras) in number. In speech, ordinal numbers are commonly used up to the 40th, when saying the floor in a high rise building. Ordinal numbers are also used to say the first day of the month (e.g. 1° de maio – 1st of May), but for the second day onwards, cardinal numbers are used (e.g. 2 de maio – 2nd of May).

Portuguese	English
7° andar	7th floor
2ª feira (segunda-feira)	Monday

Remark: The short form of the ordinal number is different from English.

18.1.8. Use of Roman numbers

Roman numbers are usually used up to XXX in proper nouns, to divide chapters and when talking about centuries.

Portuguese	English
Papa Paulo VI (sexto)	Pope Paul VI (the sixth)
século XX (vinte)	twentieth century (century twenty)

Remark: Ordinal numbers are used to read the Roman numbers from I to X, but from XI on cardinal numbers are used. In legal terms (laws) ordinal numbers are used to read the Roman numbers from I to IX and from X on cardinal numbers are used.
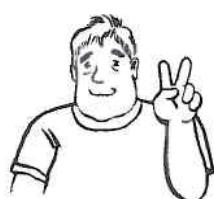
18.1.9. Reading other numbers

Portuguese		English
1,5kg	um quilo **e** meio	one **and** a half kilos
1%	um **por cento**	one **per cent**
10%	dez **por cento**	ten **per cent**
US$1	um **dólar**	one **dollar**
US$10	dez **dólares**	ten **dollars**
US$2,3 milhões	dois **vírgula** três milhões de dólares	two **point** (literally **comma**) three million dollars

18.2. Mathematical expressions

symbol	Portuguese	English
+	mais	plus/and
-	menos	minus
X	vezes/multiplicado por	times/multiplied by
:	dividido por	divided by
=	igual a	equals, is equal to
≠	diferente de	is not equal to
>	maior que	more than
<	menor que	less than
%	por cento	per cent

Remark: X is also used for score (2 **X** 0 = dois **a** zero) and dimensions (1m **X** 2m = um metro **por** dois metros)

Quantas pessoas? **Duas**.
How many people? **Two**.

18.3. Multiple numerals

Portuguese	English
dobro/duplo	double
triplo	triple
quádruplo	quadruple
quíntuplo	quintuple
sêxtuplo	sextuple
séptuplo	septuple
óctuplo	octuple
nônuplo	nonuple
décuplo	decuple

Remark: Multiple numerals are usually preceded by the masculine definite article.
e.g. Paguei o dobro do preço. (I paid double the price.)

18.4. Fraction numerals

Portuguese	English
meio/meia	half
terço(s)	third(s)
quarto(s)	quarter(s)
quinto(s)	fifth(s)
sexto(s)	sixth(s)
sétimo(s)	seventh(s)
oitavo(s)	eighth(s)
nono(s)	ninth(s)
décimo	tenth
onze avos	eleventh
doze avos	twelfth
centésimo(a)	hundredth
milésimo(a)	thousandth

18.5. Collective numerals

Portuguese	English
a dúzia	dozen
a dezena	ten
a quinzena	fortnight
a centena	hundred
o bimestre	two months
o trimestre	quarter
o semestre	half year
o século	century
o milênio	millennium

19. TIME

time	Portuguese	
8:00	oito horas	
8:05	oito e cinco	
8:10	oito e dez	
8:15	oito e quinze	
8:20	oito e vinte	
8:25	oito e vinte e cinco	
8:30	oito e **meia**	oito e trinta
8:35	oito e trinta e cinco	vinte e cinco **para as** nove
8:40	oito e quarenta	vinte **para as** nove
8:45	oito e quarenta e cinco	quinze **para as** nove
8:50	oito e cinqüenta	dez **para as** nove
8:55	oito e cinqüenta e cinco	cinco **para as** nove
9:00	nove horas	

Remarks:

- In Portuguese, different verbs (plural/singular) and prepositions are used to say the time depending on the gender (masculine/feminine) and number (singular/plural).
- *São, às, para as, das* (it's/at/to/from) are used for plural numbers.
- *É, ao, para o, do* (it's/at/to/from) are used only for *meio-dia* (twelve o'clock).
- *É, à, para a, da* (it's/at/to/from) are used for *meia-noite* (mid-night) and *uma hora* (one o'clock).

Saying a.m. or p.m. in Portuguese

Portuguese	English	
3 horas **da** madrugada	3 o'clock in the morning	3 a.m.
5 horas **da** manhã	5 o'clock in the morning	5 a.m.
2 horas **da** tarde	2 o'clock in the afternoon	2 p.m.
7 horas **da** noite	7 o'clock in the evening	7 p.m.

Remark: *Madrugada* (dawn) is used to tell the time from 1 a.m. to 5 a.m.

Portuguese	English
Tenho aula **às** cinco e meia.	I have a class **at** 5:30.
Agora **são** 10 horas.	**It is** 10:00 o'clock now.
Trabalho **das** 8h **às** 5h.	I work **from** 8 a.m. **to** 5 p.m.
É meio dia e meia.	**It is** twelve thirty.
Que horas **são** agora?	What time **is it** now?
Ontem eu levantei **às** 6h **da manhã**.	Yesterday I got up **at** 6 **a.m.**

20. MEASUREMENT
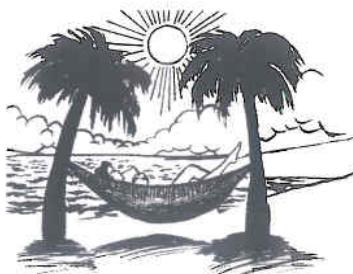
symbol	Portuguese	English
l	(o) litro	liter
ml	(o) mililitro	milliliter
m	(o) metro	meter
m²	(o) metro quadrado	square meter
m³	(o) metro cúbico	cubic meter
cm	(o) centímetro	centimeter
mm	(o) milímetro	millimeter
kg	(o) quilo/quilograma	kilo/kilogram
g	(o) grama	gram
km	(o) quilômetro	kilometer
ha	(o) hectare	hectare
t	(a) tonelada	tonne
°C	(o) grau (centígrado)	degree (centigrade)

21. SHAPE

Portuguese	English
oval	oval
redondo/a	round
quadrado/a	square
retangular	rectangular
triangular	triangular

22. CARDINAL POINTS

symbol	Portuguese	English
N	o Norte	north
S	o Sul	south
L	o Leste	east
O	o Oeste	west
NE	o Nordeste	northeast
NO	o Noroeste	northwest
SE	o Sudeste	southeast
SO	o Sudoeste	southwest

Ela viaja todos os anos para o Nordeste.
She travels every year to the Northeast region.

23. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED OR MISUSED

Here you will find a list of easily confused and often misused words. They are in alphabetical order and divided into two groups: verbs and other words.

23.1. Aprender – Estudar

Aprender means *to learn something new* and *estudar* means *to learn what you have already learned*. *Estudar* also means *to study* (to go to school or university).

Portuguese	English
Onde você **aprendeu** inglês?	Where did you **learn** English?
Eu ainda não **aprendi** verbos.	I have not **learned** verbs yet.
Ela tem que **estudar** os verbos.	She has to **learn** the verbs.
Ele **estuda** numa escola pública.	He **studies** at a public school.

23.2. Estar – Fazer

These verbs have different meanings.

Portuguese	English
Está muito frio.	**It is** very cold. (today)
Está fazendo muito frio.	**It is** very cold. (now)
Na Antártica **faz** muito frio.	In the Antarctic **it is** very cold. (always)

23.3. Gostar – Gostaria

Gostar means *to enjoy* or *to like* while *gostaria* is the conditional form of *gostar* and it is only used in conditional sentences or as a polite form.

Portuguese	English
Eu **gosto** de dançar.	I **like** dancing.
Eu **gostaria** de dançar.	I **would like** to dance.
Se eu soubesse dançar, eu **gostaria** de dançar.	If I knew how to dance, I **would like** to dance.

23.4. Ir – Andar

Sometimes verbs *ir* and *andar* have exactly the same meaning (to ride, to fly, etc.). However, in Portuguese *ir* means *to go to somewhere* and it must be **followed by a destination**, while *andar* is **not followed by a destination**.

Portuguese	English
Eu **vou** ao Brasil de avião.	I **am going** to Brazil by plane.
Eu **ando** muito de avião.	I **fly** a lot.
Eu adoro **andar** a cavalo.	I love **riding** on horseback.

23.5. Ir – Vir

Ir (to go) is used to indicate a movement **away from the speaker** or the place where the speaker is at the moment of speaking while *vir* (to come) is used to indicate a movement **toward the speaker**, or the place where the speaker is at the moment of speaking. If used to indicate a movement, *ir* (to go) is followed by the adverbs *lá/ali* (there) while *vir* (to come) is followed by the adverbs *aqui/cá* (here). The adverb is often omitted, but try to use it, at least mentally, in order to make it easier to distinguish both and not to misuse them.

Portuguese	English
Ele não **foi** à aula hoje.	He didn't **go** to class today.
Ele não **veio** à aula hoje.	He didn't **come** to class today.

23.6. Levar – Trazer

Levar (to take) is used to indicate a movement **away from the speaker** or the place where the speaker is at the moment of speaking while *trazer* (to bring) is used to indicate a movement **toward the speaker**, or the place where the speaker is at the moment of speaking. If used to indicate a movement, *levar* (to take) is followed by the adverbs *lá/ali* (there) while *trazer* (to bring) is followed by the adverb *aqui* (here). The adverb is often omitted, but try to use it, at least mentally, in order to make it easier to distinguish both and not to misuse them.

Portuguese	English
Vou **levar** as crianças (lá).	I will **take** the children (there).
Vou **trazer** as crianças (aqui).	I will **bring** the children (here).

23.7. Pedir – Perguntar

Perguntar is used *to ask a question* while *pedir* is used *to ask for something*.

Portuguese	English
Ele não me **perguntou**.	He **did not ask** me.
Ele **pediu** uma salada.	He **ordered** a salad.

Ele me **perguntou** se eu queria ir ao cinema.
He **asked** me if I wanted to go to the movies.

23.8. Precisar – Precisar de

In Brazil, there is a difference between these verbs. *Precisar* means *to have to* or *must* and it is **followed by an infinitive verb** while *precisar de* means *to need* and it is **followed by an object**.

Portuguese	English
Preciso ir ao banco.	I **have to** go to the bank.
Preciso de dinheiro.	I **need** money.

23.9. Provar – Experimentar – Tentar

These verbs are often confused, as they are the same word in English.

Portuguese	English
Posso **provar/experimentar** esta camisa?	Can I **try on** this shirt?
Quero **provar/experimentar** este vinho.	I want to **try** this wine.
Eu vou **tentar** falar com ele.	I will **try/attempt** to talk to him.

23.10. Saber – Conhecer
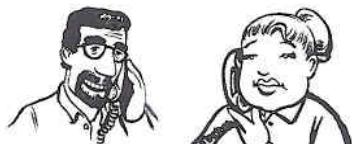
Saber means *to know something,* or *to know how to do something,* while *conhecer* means *to know a place, or a person.*

Portuguese	English
Eu **sei** onde fica esta rua.	I **know** where this street is.
Eu **sei** nadar.	I **know how to** swim. (I **can** swim.)
Eu **conheço** esta rua.	I **know** this street.

23.11. Saber – Poder – Conseguir

Both *saber* (to know how to do something) and *poder* (to be able to) can be translated into English as *can*. However, *poder* is also translated as *may, to be able*, depending on the context. *Conseguir* means *to manage, to be able, to get, to obtain* and *can* depending on the context.

Portuguese	English
Ela **não sabe** nadar.	She **cannot** swim. (at all)
Ela **não pode** nadar.	She **cannot** swim. (today)
Posso entrar?	**May** I come in?
Não **consegui** falar com ele.	I couldn't **manage** to talk to him.

A senhora **sabe** quando ele volta?
Do you **know** when he will be back?

23.12. Ser – Estar

In Portuguese, both verbs *ser* and *estar* are the verb *to be* in English, and their correct use is difficult. *Ser* is used for **permanent** or **unchangeable situations** like nationality, origin, profession, marital status, etc.

Portuguese	English
Ela é bonita. (sempre)	She is pretty. (always)
Ele é de São Paulo.	He is from São Paulo.
O carro é grande.	The car is big.
É muito caro.	It is very expensive.

Estar is used for **temporary** or **changeable situations**, also for a state of being.

Portuguese	English
Ela está bonita. (hoje)	She is pretty. (today)
Ele está em São Paulo.	He is in São Paulo.
O carro está quebrado.	The car is broken.
Está muito caro.	It is very expensive.

23.13. Ser – Estar – Ficar – Andar – Viver

These verbs are often confused as they mean more or less the same in English.

Portuguese	English
Ele é nervoso.	He is nervous. (always)
Ele está nervoso.	He is nervous. (now)
Ele fica nervoso.	He becomes/gets nervous.
Ele anda nervoso.	He has been nervous. (lately)
Ele vive nervoso.	He is nervous. (always)

23.14. Ter – Sentir – Estar

Sentir and *ter* have the same meaning in English. Their use is, to some extent, interchangeable and is normally linked with a given time. (e.g. at 11 o'clock, at this time, after my gym class, when, etc.). *Estar* is used for temporary situations and it is more frequently used than ter/sentir.

Portuguese	English
Eu sempre tenho/sinto fome a esta hora.	I always feel hungry at this time.
Eu estou com fome.	I am hungry. (now)
Eu tenho medo de cachorro.	I am afraid of dogs. (always)
Eu estou com medo do cachorro.	I am afraid of the dog. (now)

23.15. Ter – Ter que

Ter means *to have* (possession) and it is **followed by an object** while *ter que* or *ter de* (obligation) means *to have to* or m*ust* and is **followed by a verb**.

Portuguese	English
Você **tem** filhos?	Do you **have** children?
Ele **tem que** viajar amanhã.	He **has to** travel tomorrow.

23.16. Tocar – Jogar – Brincar

All these verbs are easily confused because they have the same meaning (to play) in English. *Tocar* is used for **instruments**; *jogar* is used for **sports/cards** and *brincar* is used for **children's play**.

Portuguese	English
Ele **toca** violão.	He **plays** the guitar.
Você **joga** tênis/cartas?	Do you **play** tennis/cards?
As crianças **estão brincando**.	The children **are playing**.

Remark: *Tocar*, *jogar* and *brincar* have also other meanings.

Portuguese	English
O telefone **está tocando**.	The telephone **is ringing**.
Joguei o papel **no lixo**.	I **threw** the paper **away**.
Você **está brincando**?	**Are** you **kidding**?

23.17. Impersonal verbs

Impersonal verbs are unrelated to a particular person. They often refer to natural phenomenon and are only used in the 3rd person singular (it). Some verbs like *fazer* (to make/to do) can also be used as an impersonal verb, but their original meaning can change completely when used as an impersonal verb.

Portuguese	English
Choveu muito ontem.	**It rained** a lot yesterday.
Dá pra você ligar depois?	**Can** you call me later?
Faz um ano que moro aqui.	I've lived here **for** a year. (**It makes**…)
Há muita gente aqui.	**There are** many people here.
Tem muita gente aqui.	**There are** many people here.

Você sabe **jogar** cartas?
Do you know how to **play** cards?

23.18. Verbs + prepositions

In Portuguese, there are verbs which are followed by prepositions that differ from English. Try to learn the most important verbs along with the prepositions and remember that a preposition usually varies in gender (masculine/feminine) and in number (singular/plural), if it is followed by a noun.

Portuguese	English
Ele **gosta** muito **do** Brasil.	He loves Brazil.
Ele **começou a** trabalhar.	He began working.
Não posso **ir à** reunião.	I cannot **go to the** meeting.
Você **precisa destas** cartas?	Do you **need these** letters?

23.19. Verbs + *que*

In Portuguese, there are some verbs which require the conjunction *that* (que) while in English it is not required at all, or it can be omitted. The conjunction *que* (that), is especially used to introduce the subjunctive mood.

Portuguese	English
Acho que ele está em casa.	I **think that** he is at home.
Ele **disse que** ele não pode.	He **said that** he cannot.
Espero que não chova.	I **hope that** it will not rain.
Ele **quer que** eu vá com ele.	He **wants** me to go with him.
Eu **sei que** ele tem tempo.	I **know that** he has time.

23.20. Bem – Bom

Bem (well) is an **adverb**. It is used with a verb, an adjective or an adverb and it is **invariable**. *Bom* (good) is an **adjective**, it is used with a noun and it is **variable**. Remember that in Portuguese adjectives vary in gender and in number. The opposite of *bem* is *mal* and the opposite of *bom/boa* is *ruim* or *mau/má*. Instead of using opposites, you can put the sentence in the negative.

Portuguese	English
Ele fala inglês muito **bem**.	He speaks English very **well**.
O café (não) está muito **bom**.	The coffee is (not) very **good**.
Boa idéia!	**Good** idea!

Bom dia!
Good morning!

23.21. De – Do – Da

Try to grasp the correct use of *de/do/da* as early as possible because they are frequently used and their purpose can vary depending on the context.

purpose	Portuguese	English
to link words	livro **de** português	Portuguese book
to show ownership	o carro **do/de** Pedro	Peter's car
	o carro **da/de** Maria	Mary's car
to specify something	o gerente **do** banco	the manager **of the** bank
	o gerente **da** firma	the manager **of the** firm
	Preciso **do** dinheiro.	I need **the** money.
to generalize	Preciso **de** dinheiro.	I need money.

23.22. Dois – Duas

In Portuguese, numbers 1 and 2 (also numbers containing number 1 or 2 like 21, 22, 31, 32, etc.) and from 200 to 900 (ending in **entos**) are feminine if they are followed by a feminine noun. However, if they are used just as numbers or followed by a masculine noun, they take the masculine form.

Portuguese	English
Dois ingressos, por favor.	**Two** tickets, please.
Duas cervejas, por favor.	**Two** beers, please.

23.23. Férias – Feriado

Férias means *vacation* or *holiday* and *feriado* means *a public holiday*.

Portuguese	English
Boas **férias**!	Have a nice **holiday**!
Hoje é **feriado**.	Today is **a public holiday**.

23.24. Gente – A gente

Gente (people) and *a gente* (we/us) are often confused in Portuguese. *Gente* is usually used without the definite article, it is uncountable and its synonym is *pessoa(s)* while *a gente* is a colloquial form, always preceded by the definite article and it is often used instead of *nós/nos* (we/us) in speech.

Portuguese	English
Oi, **gente**!	Hi, **everybody**!
Nossa! Quanta **gente**!	Wow! What a **crowd**!
Tem muita **gente** aqui.	There are many **people** here.
A gente não sabe ainda.	**We** still do not know.
Você vai com **a gente**?	Are you going with **us**?

23.25. Mas – Mais

Both words are often confused because in spoken Portuguese their pronunciation can be similar for both. *Mas* means *but* and *mais* means *more*.

Portuguese	English
Eu gosto, **mas** ele não.	I like it, **but** he doesn't.
Quer **mais** café?	Would you like **more** coffee?

23.26. Me – Mim

These two words are sometimes confused as they are the same word in English. *Me* is used **before or after a verb**, while *mim* is used **after a preposition**.

Portuguese	English
Ele **me** ajudou bastante.	He helped **me** a lot.
Você ainda precisa de **mim**?	Do you still need **me**?

23.27. Muito – Pouco

Muito (very/a lot) and *pouco* (little) used as adverbs are invariable. However, *muito* (many/much) and *pouco* (little/few) used as indefinite pronouns are variable in gender (muito/muita) and in number (muitos/muitas). The singular form is used with uncountable nouns while the plural form is used with countable nouns.

Portuguese	English
A casa é **muito** bonita.	The house is **very** nice.
Ele trabalha **muito/pouco**.	He works **a lot/little**.
Ele tem **muitos/poucos** amigos.	He has **many/few** friends.
Ele bebe **muita/pouca** água.	He drinks **a lot of/little** water.

23.28. O que – Que – Qual

O que, *que* and *qual* have sometimes the same meaning and can easily be confused. *O que* and *qual* are always followed by a subject pronoun (você) and a verb while *que* is always followed by a noun. *Qual* usually implies a choice. *O que* and also other question words are usually followed by *é que* (is it that/ever), which is merely used for emphasis and can be omitted without altering the sense of the sentence.

Portuguese	English
O que (é que) você disse?	**What** (is it that) you said?
Que horas são?	**What** time is it?
Qual (dos dois) você quer?	**Which** (of the two) do you want?
Qual/Como é seu nome?	**What** is your name?

23.29. País – Pais – Parentes

These words have different meanings. *País* (stressed on i) means *country*, has two syllables and may be hyphenated (pa-ís) while *pais* means *parents* or *fathers*, has one syllable and cannot be hyphenated. *Parentes* does not mean *parents* as you may expect, it means *relatives*.

Portuguese	English
De que **país** ele é?	Which **country** is he from?
Meus **pais** são italianos.	My **parents** are Italian.
Temos muitos **parentes**.	We have many **relatives**.

23.30. Para – Por

These prepositions are often confused with each other as they sometimes have the same meaning in English. Only with some practice will you use them correctly. *Para* indicates **direction** and can vary in gender (para o, para a) and in number (para os, para as). *Para* also means *to*, *for* and *in order to*.
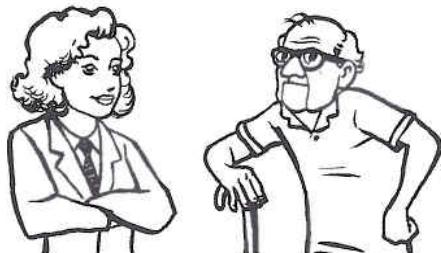
Portuguese	English
Nós vamos **para o** Brasil.	We are going **to** Brazil.
Eu vou dar este livro **para** ela.	I will give this book **to** her.

Para, para o, para a can be shortened to *pra, pro, pra* or replaced with *a, ao, à*.

Portuguese	English
Nós vamos **ao/pro** Brasil.	We are going **to** Brazil.
Eu vou dar este livro **a/pra** ela.	I will give this book **to** her.

Por is very often used in idiomatic expressions, along with certain verbs, as the agent of the passive voice and also to indicate time (but in this case, its use is optional). *Por* can also vary in gender (pelo, pela) and in number (pelos, pelas).

Portuguese	English
Obrigado/a **por** tudo.	Thanks **for** everything.
Eu fui atendido/a **pela** Dra. Ana.	I was examined **by** Dr. Ann.
Nós passamos **pelo** aeroporto.	We passed **by the** airport.
Eu vou viajar (**por**) dois dias.	I will travel **for** two days.

O **pai** dela já é aposentado.
Her **father** is already retired.

PART II – PORTUGUESE VERBS

CHAPTER I – INTRODUCTION TO PORTUGUESE VERBS

A verb is an action or a doing word in a sentence. It is perhaps the most important word in a sentence and must always be present to complete an idea. In Portuguese there are more tenses available and the endings of verbs are more varied. Therefore, Portuguese verbs are much more complicated than English verbs.

1. CONJUGATION

There are **three conjugations**, that is, three different verb groups in Portuguese.

conjugations	Portuguese	English
verbs ending in **ar**	falar	to speak
verbs ending in **er**	beber	to drink
verbs ending in **ir**	assistir	to watch

Remarks:

- Most verbs are regular.
- It is very important to distinguish the ending of a verb because all regular verbs with one of the three endings follow the model for that ending.
- Verbs ending in **ar** are the most common in Portuguese.
- There are also a few verbs ending in **or**, like *pôr* (to put), but they really belong to the group of verbs ending in **er** because in the past *pôr* used to be *poer*.
- All verbs ending in **por** are irregular.

2. TENSE

A tense indicates when the action takes place, or may take place.

past	present	future	conditional
Tomei um suco.	**Estou comendo** pizza.	**Vou tomar** um sorvete.	**Gostaria** de tomar um cafezinho.
I drank a juice.	I am eating pizza.	I will eat an ice cream.	I would like to drink a coffee.

In Portuguese, a tense can be called **simple tense** or **compound tense**. A simple tense consists of only **one verb**, that is, the main verb while a compound tense consists of **two verbs**, that is, an auxiliary verb and the main verb.

tense	Portuguese	English
simple	Ele **trabalha** numa empresa.	He **works** in a company.
compound	Ele **vai trabalhar** amanhã.	He **will work** tomorrow.

3. MOOD

In Portuguese, the verbs are divided into **three different groups**, called **moods**.

3.1. Indicative

The indicative is used to express **a sure fact**.

Portuguese	English
O telefone **está tocando**.	The telephone **is** ringing.

3.2. Subjunctive

The subjunctive is used to express **an unsure or a possible fact, a wish**, etc. It is mainly used in dependent clauses.

Portuguese	English
Eu espero que **chova** hoje.	I hope **it will rain** today.

Remarks:

- The subjunctive is used after certain verbs, expressions, conjunctions, relative pronouns and adverbs. The subjunctive is difficult to understand because it is used differently in English and it doesn't correspond exactly in tense to the Portuguese tense. You will have to learn the subjunctive by heart because you cannot work it out by pure translation from the English form.
- The study of the subjunctive is for advanced students, but in the early stage you can easily communicate in Portuguese using simple sentences that do not require the subjunctive.

3.3. Imperative

The imperative is used to express **a command or request**.

Portuguese	English
Diga a ela que eu ligo de volta.	**Tell** her that I will call her back.

4. INFINITIVE

In Portuguese, there are **two kinds of infinitive**. One is called **impersonal infinitive**, which is the name of a verb like *falar* (to speak) and the other one is called **personal infinitive** which is also used in the plural form.

Remark: Both infinitives can be confused; however, if the plural form can replace the singular form, it is a personal infinitive.

4.1. Impersonal infinitive

Portuguese	English
falar	to speak
beber	to drink
assistir	to watch

The impersonal infinitive is normally used alone or together with other verbs. It is often used after the main or the auxiliary verb and also after prepositions.

Portuguese	English
Eu sei **falar** português.	I know how to/can **speak** Portuguese.
Gosto de **beber** cerveja.	I like **to drink** beer.
Assistir (à) televisão é muito divertido.	**Watching** TV is a lot of fun.

4.2. Personal infinitive

The personal infinitive is **a feature available only in the Portuguese language**. It is changeable according to the person it matches (*falar/falar/falarmos/falarem*).

Portuguese	English
falar/falar/falarmos/falarem	to speak
beber/beber/bebermos/beberem	to drink
assistir/assistir/assistirmos/assistirem	to watch

The personal infinitive is normally used with a few particular verbs like *ver* (to see), *ouvir* (to hear), *deixar* (to allow), etc., in sentences beginning with *É...* (It is...), instead of the present subjunctive and mainly after prepositions *de* (of/from), *para* (for), *por* (for), *sem* (without), etc.

Portuguese	English
É melhor vocês **não falarem** nada.	It is better you **do not say** anything.
É melhor eles **beberem** outra coisa.	It is better they **drink** something else.
É melhor nós **assistirmos** (à) televisão.	It is better we **watch** TV.

5. PARTICIPLES

Participles are divided into two groups: **present participle** and **past participle**.

5.1. Present participle (or gerund)

Portuguese	English
fal**ando**	speaking
beb**endo**	drinking
assist**indo**	watching
p**ondo**	putting

The present participle or gerund, is normally used along with the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) to form continuous tenses and with a few other verbs. It is not used after prepositions and it does not have a noun or an adjective function as in English.

Portuguese	English
Alô, quem **está falando**?	Hello, who **is speaking**?
Eu **estou bebendo/tomando** café.	I **am drinking** coffee.
Talvez eles **estejam assistindo** (à) TV.	Maybe they **are watching** TV.
Ela **está pondo** a roupa.	She **is putting on** her clothes.
Ele **vive reclamando**.	He **is always complaining**.

5.2. Past participle

The past participle is used along with the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) to form perfect tenses. It is also used along with the auxiliary verb *ser* (to be) to form the passive voice, with the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) and sometimes also with *andar/viver* (to be) to form the stative passive. As in English, there are regular and irregular past participles in Portuguese.

Remarks:

* A past participle can be regular in Portuguese while irregular in English or vice-versa.
* Be aware that past participles vary depending on the verb they are used with: Past participles used along with the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) to form perfect tenses are **invariable**, while past participles used with the auxiliary verb *ser, estar, andar* and *viver* (to be) to form the passive voice, or the stative passive, are **variable** (in gender and in number).

O telefone **está tocando**.
The telephone **is ringing**.

5.2.1. Regular past participle

Portuguese	English
falado	spoken
bebido	drunk
assistido	watched

Remark: Regular participles are made by dropping **ar** and adding **ado** to verbs ending in **ar** and by dropping **er/ir** and adding **ido** to verbs ending in **er/ir**.

Portuguese	English
Você tem falado com ele ultimamente?	Have you talked to him lately?
Eu nunca tinha bebido caipirinha antes.	I had never drunk caipirinha before.
Eu não tenho assistido (à) televisão.	I have not watched TV lately.

5.2.2. Irregular past participle

Portuguese		English	
verb	past participle	verb	past participle
abrir	aberto	to open	opened
cobrir	coberto	to cover	covered
descobrir	descoberto	to discover	discovered
dizer	dito	to say	said
escrever	escrito	to write	written
fazer	feito	to make/do	made/done
ganhar	ganho/ganhado	to win/earn	won/earned
gastar	gasto/gastado	to spend	spent
pagar	pago/pagado	to pay	paid
pôr	posto	to put	put
ver	visto	to see	seen
vir	vindo	to come	come

Remark: There are only a few irregular past participles and because most of them are frequently used, they are soon memorized.

Portuguese	English
O que você tem feito?	What have you been doing lately?
O que você teria feito?	What would you have done?

A porta está aberta.
The door is open.

5.2.3. Verbs with two past participles

In Portuguese, there are a few verbs like *pagar* (to pay) which have **two past participles**, a **regular** past participle (pagado) and an **irregular** past participle (pago).

Portuguese				English	
verb	regular	irregular		verb	participle
aceitar	aceitado	aceito(s)	aceita(s)	to accept	accepted
acender	acendido	aceso(s)	acesa(s)	to light	lit
eleger	elegido	eleito(s)	eleita(s)	to elect	elected
entregar	entregado	entregue(s)	entregue(s)	to deliver	delivered
enxugar	enxugado	enxuto(s)	enxuta(s)	to dry	dried
exprimir	exprimido	expresso(s)	expressa(s)	to express	expressed
expulsar	expulsado	expulso(s)	expulsa(s)	to expel	expelled
ganhar	ganhado	ganho(s)	ganha(s)	to win	won
gastar	gastado	gasto(s)	gasta(s)	to spend	spent
imprimir	imprimido	impresso(s)	impressa(s)	to print	printed
limpar	limpado	limpo(s)	limpa(s)	to clean	cleaned
matar	matado	morto(s)	morta(s)	to kill	killed
morrer	morrido	morto(s)	morta(s)	to die	dead
pagar	pagado	pago(s	paga(s)	to pay	paid
pegar	pegado	pego(s)	pega(s)	to catch	caught
prender	prendido	preso(s)	presa(s)	to arrest	arrested
salvar	salvado	salvo(s)	salva(s)	to save	saved
soltar	soltado	solto(s)	solta(s)	to release	released
suspender	suspendido	suspenso(s)	suspensa(s)	to suspend	suspended

Remark: There are other verbs with two past participles, but the most useful ones are given above.

The regular form (invariable) of a verb with two participles is used to along with the auxiliary verb *ter* to form **perfect tenses**.

Portuguese	English
Pensei que ele **tivesse pagado** a conta.	I thought he **had paid** the bill.

The irregular form (variable in gender and in number) **of a verb with two past participles** is frequently used with the **verb** *estar* (to be) and sometimes with verbs *andar/viver* (to be) and *ficar* (to become), **to form the stative passive** and with the **verb** *ser* (to be), **to form the passive voice**.

Portuguese	English
A conta **está paga**.	The bill **is paid**.
A conta **foi paga**.	The bill **was paid**.

6. VERB TYPES

6.1. Auxiliary verbs

An auxiliary verb **is used to form compound tenses**. The main auxiliary verbs in Portuguese are *ser* (to be), *estar* (to be), *ir* (to go) and *ter* (to have).

verbs	Portuguese	English
ser	Ele é muito **conhecido**.	He is well **known**.
estar	O telefone **está tocando**.	The phone **is ringing**.
ir	**Vou viajar** amanhã.	I **will travel** tomorrow.
ter	**Tem chovido** bastante.	It **has been raining** a lot.

6.2. Modal Verbs

English modal verbs (can/may/must) are treated as a normal verb in Portuguese.

Portuguese	English
Você **pode/poderia** me fazer um favor?	**Can/Could** you do me a favor?

6.3. Reflexive, reciprocal and pronominal verbs

In Portuguese **reflexive verbs**, like *sentar-se* (to sit down) or *encontrar-se* (to meet), are followed by the reflexive pronoun *se* (oneself) in the infinitive. A verb is usually reflexive when **the action refers back to the subject**. A **reflexive verb** is also used to express a **reciprocal action**. In this case, at least two people are involved in the action and the reflexive pronoun, *se,* is translated as *each other* into English. Note that **pronominal verbs** are also followed by the same pronouns *me/se/nos* (myself, etc.) used along with reflexive verbs. Reflexive verbs are more common in Portuguese than in English and a reflexive verb in Portuguese is not necessarily reflexive in English and vice-versa.

verbs	Portuguese	English
reflexive	**Sente-se**, por favor.	Sit **(yourself) down**, please.
reciprocal	**Eles** não **se conhecem**.	They do not **know each other**.
pronominal	Não **estou me sentindo** bem.	I am not **feeling (myself)** well.

6.4. Transitive and intransitive verbs

Transitive verbs like *comprar* (to buy) or *encontrar* (to meet) need an object (what?/who?/to whom?) and **intransitive** verbs like *chegar* (to arrive) do not.

verbs	Portuguese	English
transitive	Ele comprou **um presente para mim**.	He bought **me a present**.
intransitive	Ele já **chegou**.	He **has** already **arrived**.

6.5. Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs have an **invariable radical (root)** (*falar* > *falo*) and are easy to memorize. **Irregular** verbs have a **variable radical** (*fazer* > *faço*), or a **minor spelling change** (*preferir* > *prefiro*) and a few verbs have **a completely different form** from their radical (*ir* > *vou*). Irregular verbs need to be memorized and practiced until they come naturally. They are perhaps the greatest challenge for any student. Note that in Portuguese, a verb can be regular in one tense, but irregular in another.

verbs	Portuguese	English
irregular	O livro **está** na mesa.	The book **is** on the table.
regular	O livro **estava** na mesa.	The book **was** on the table.

6.6. Defective verbs

A defective verb is a verb which cannot be conjugated in all tenses and it is usually replaced with another verb with the same meaning. Defective verbs which refer to animals like *latir* (to bark) can only be used in the singular and plural form. Don't concern yourself much with defective verbs as there are only a few defective verbs in Portuguese and they are rarely used.

Portuguese	English
A firma **faliu. (fechou)**	The company **went bankrupt. (closed down)**
O(s) cachorro(s) **late/(latem)**.	The dog(s) **barks/(bark)**.

6.7. Impersonal verbs

Impersonal verbs are unrelated to a particular person and they are used only in the singular form, also when used along with an auxiliary verb. Impersonal verbs usually refer to nature like *chover* (to rain), however, there are a few verbs like *dar* (to give), *fazer* (to do), *haver* (there is/are), *ter* (to have) which can also be used impersonally.

Portuguese	English
Está chovendo.	**It is raining.**
Dá pra você entender?	**Can** you understand it?
Faz dois anos que eu moro aqui.	**It has been** two years since I've been living here. (I've been living here **for** two years.)
Há/Tem muitos turistas aqui.	**There are** many tourists here.

Remark: Note that when a verb is used impersonally, its meaning can vary depending on the context.

7. VOICE

A verb can be used in three different ways, called voices. They are the active, passive and reflexive voice.

7.1. Active voice

In the active voice the **subject does the action**.

Portuguese	English
Ele me convidou para jantar.	He **invited me** for dinner.

7.2. Passive voice

In the passive voice the **subject has the action done to it**.

Portuguese	English
Fui convidada (por ele) para jantar.	I **was invited** (by him) for dinner.

7.3. Reflexive voice

In the reflexive voice the **action refers back to the subject** or the **action is reciprocal**.

Portuguese	English
Sente-se, por favor.	**Sit (yourself) down**, please.
Eles não **se conhecem**.	**They** don't **know each other**.

Não me lembro o nome dessa música.
I **don't remember** the name of this song.

CHAPTER II – MOODS, TENSES, VOICES AND SPEECH IN MORE DETAIL

1. INDICATIVE MOOD

The indicative mood is **used to express a sure fact**. Below is a table of all the twelve tenses frequently used in the indicative mood. The first six are basic tenses. You have to know them to be able to communicate and read simple texts in Portuguese. The last six tenses are for more advanced students. Practice them after the first six are mastered.

Portuguese	English
Eu **falo** com ele todos os dias.	I **talk** to him every day.
Eu **estou falando** com ele agora.	I **am talking** to him now.
Eu **estava falando** com ele quando você chegou.	I **was talking** to him when you arrived.
Eu **falei** com ele (ontem).	I **have talked/talked** to him (yesterday).
Eu **falava** com ele todos os dias.	I **used to talk** to him every day.
Eu **vou falar** com ele depois.	I **am going to/will** talk to him later.
Eu **falarei** com ele depois.	I **am going to/will** talk to him later.
Eu **falaria** com ele outra vez.	I **would talk** to him again.
Eu **tenho falado** muito com ele.	I **have been talking** a lot to him (lately).
Eu já **tinha falado** com ele sobre isso.	I **had** already **talked** to him about this.
Eu **terei falado** com ele em dois dias.	I **will have talked** to him in two days.
Eu **teria falado** com ele de novo.	I **would have talked** to him again.

Remark: The last four tenses (perfect tenses) are formed with the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle. For **regular verbs**, the **past participle ends in ado/ido**. For **irregular verbs**, the **past participle varies**. See table below.

Portuguese		English	
verb	past participle	verb	past participle
abrir	aberto	to open	opened
cobrir	coberto	to cover	covered
descobrir	descoberto	to discover	discovered
dizer	dito	to say	said
escrever	escrito	to write	written
fazer	feito	to make/do	made/done
ganhar	ganho/ganhado	to win/earn	won/earned
gastar	gasto/gastado	to spend	spent
pagar	pago/pagado	to pay	paid
pôr	posto	to put	put
ver	visto	to see	seen
vir	vindo	to come	come

1.1. Simple present (presente)

```
                        present
        past _____|_____ future
```

The simple present tense is **used to express habitual actions, that is, to talk about things in general, something that often happens or something true**. It is not used for an action that is happening now, that is, at the moment of speaking. In this case, the present continuous tense is used. The simple present tense is often used with adverbs or adverbial phrases like *always, often, never, normally, every day, once a year*, etc. Sometimes the simple present tense is **used to express future time**. These sentences usually contain future time words. The simple present tense can also be **used for dramatic narrative**. It is often used by radio and TV commentators at sports events to describe an action. If a temporal clause like *for + period of time*, or *it is + period of time + since* is used, the simple present is equivalent in English to the present perfect or to the present perfect continuous (See final three examples below).

Remarks:
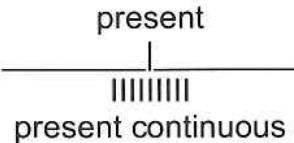
- Regular verbs ending in **ar** make the simple present tense by adding o/a/amos/am, verbs ending in **er** by adding o/e/emos/em and verbs ending in **ir** by adding o/e/imos/em, all to the stem of the verb.
- The **simple present** tense is the tense with the **most irregular verbs** in Portuguese. Because both the present subjunctive and the imperative are formed from the simple present indicative, irregular verbs in the present indicative are also irregular in the present subjunctive and in the imperative.

Portuguese	English
Eles **jogam** tênis quase todos os dias.	They **play** tennis almost every day.
Ele **trabalha** num banco.	He **works** in a bank.
Eu **falo** com você amanhã, tá bom?	I **will talk** to you tomorrow, ok?
Eu **ligo** para você depois.	I **will call** you later.
Faz tempo que eu **não falo** com ela.	I **haven't talked** to her for a long time.
Faz um ano que ela **mora** aqui.	She **has been living** here for one year.
Estou doente desde semana passada.	I **have been** sick since last week.

Ele **trabalha** numa empresa.
He **works** in a company.

1.2. Present continuous (presente contínuo)

```
                          present
          _____|_____
                          IIIIIIIII
                      present continuous
```
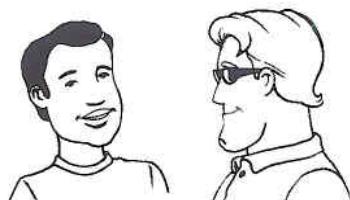
The present continuous, also called progressive form, is **used to express an action happening now, that is, at the moment of speaking or in a period around now** (this week/year). The present continuous tense is also **used to express a gradual development**. Unlike English, in Portuguese, the present continuous cannot be used to express future time when the idea of the sentence concerns a planned event (or definite intention) in the near future. In this case, the simple future should be used. Note that if a temporal clause like *for + period of time,* or *since* is used, the present continuous is equivalent in English to the present perfect continuous (See last two examples below).

Remarks:
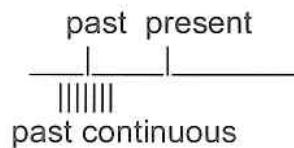
* The present continuous tense is formed with the present tense of the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) + the present participle (ndo).
* The Portuguese **ndo** form is equivalent to the English **ing** form.
* To turn a verb into **ndo** in Portuguese, just drop the **r** from the infinitive and add **ndo**. e.g. falar > fala > fala**ndo** (to speak > speak**ing**).
* In Portuguese all verbs, except for the verb *estar* (to be), can be used to form the present continuous tense.

Portuguese	English
Vocês **estão gostando** da festa?	**Are** you **enjoying** the party?
O que você **está fazendo**?	What **are** you **doing**?
O telefone **está tocando**.	The phone **is ringing**.
Eu **estou aprendendo** português.	I **am learning** Portuguese.
Está esfriando cada vez mais.	**It is getting** colder and colder.
Faz dez dias que ele **está viajando**.	He **has been travelling** for ten days.
Ele **está dormindo** desde ontem.	He **has been sleeping** since yesterday.

Eles **estão conversando**.
They **are talking**.

1.3. Past continuous (passado contínuo)

```
                    past  present
                 ___|____|___
                    |||||||
                 past continuous
```

The past continuous tense is **used to say that somebody was in the middle of an action at a certain time in the past when another action occurred**. It is also **used to express two past actions in progress simultaneously**.

Remarks:
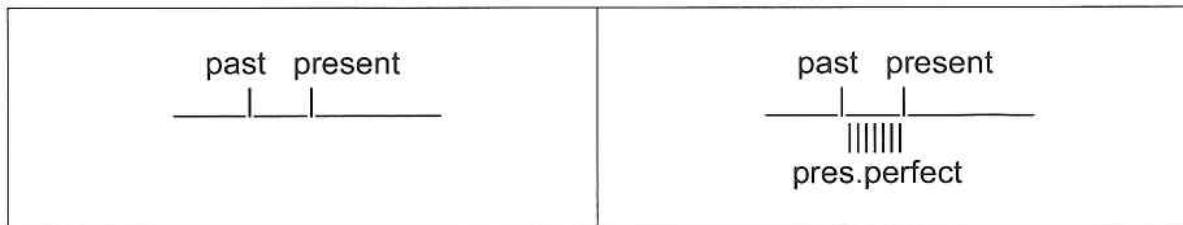
- The past continuous tense is formed with the past tense (imperfect) of the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) + the present participle (ndo).
- The Portuguese **ndo** form is equivalent to the English **ing** form.
- To turn a verb into **ndo** in Portuguese, just drop the r from the infinitive and add **ndo**. e.g. falar > fala > falando (to speak > speaking).
- In Portuguese all verbs except for the verb *estar* (to be) can be used to form the past continuous tense.

Portuguese	English
Eu estava dormindo quando você chegou.	I **was sleeping** when you arrived.
Estava chovendo quando eu saí de casa.	It **was raining** when I left home.
Eles **estavam almoçando** quando o telefone tocou.	They **were having** lunch when the phone rang.
O que você **estava fazendo** lá?	What **were** you **doing** there?
Eu **estava conversando** com a minha irmã enquanto ele **estava lendo**.	I **was talking** to my sister while he **was reading**.

Ele **estava lendo** o jornal quando cheguei em casa.
He **was reading** the newspaper when I got home.

1.4. Simple past/present perfect (pretérito perfeito simples)

past present ____|___|_____	past present ____|___|_____ |||||| pres.perfect

In Portuguese the simple past tense is used in many situations in which the present perfect tense would be required in English. That means that there is no difference between both tenses in Portuguese. The simple past tense is **equivalent to both the simple past tense and the present perfect tense in English**. The simple past tense is the **most frequently used past tense** in Portuguese. The simple past tense is **used to express a completed action, which happened at some definite time in the past**. In Portuguese, **the simple past tense is also used for recently completed actions or past actions whose time is not given and not definite.**

Remarks:
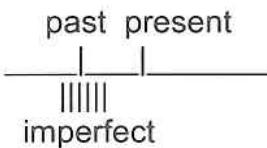
- Regular verbs ending in **ar** make the simple past tense by adding **ei/ou/amos/aram**, verbs ending in **er** by adding **i/eu/emos/eram** and verbs ending in **ir** by adding **i/iu/imos/iram,** all to the stem of the verb.
- Irregular verbs in the past tense can be hard at first, but fortunately they are **less numerous than in the simple present tense** and after some practice they come naturally.
- Note that the simple past tense (3rd person plural) is used to form the imperfect subjunctive (eles **foram** > **fosse**) and the future subjunctive (eles **foram** > **for**).

Portuguese	English
Eu **não estudei** português ontem.	I **did not study** Portuguese yesterday.
Choveu bastante ontem à noite.	It **rained** a lot last night.
Ele **não trabalhou** semana passada.	He **did not work** last week.
Acabei de chegar em casa.	I **have** just **arrived** at home.
Eu **falei** com ela hoje de manhã.	I **have talked** to her this morning.
Vocês já **almoçaram**?	**Have** you already **had** lunch?

Eu **telefonei** para ele ontem.
I **called** him yesterday.

1.5. Past imperfect (pretérito imperfeito)

```
                    past  present
              _____|___|_____
                        ||||||
                      imperfect
```

The past imperfect tense is **used to express a habit, an activity or a situation in the past which has changed or no longer exists, a frequently repeated past action or to describe something in the past**. It is used to express an action that used to occur within a certain period of time in the past that is not specified. In short, it is mainly **used to express an earlier action, time or period viewed in retrospect**. The verb *estar* (to be) is frequently used in the past imperfect tense to express a state in the past. In speech, the past imperfect tense is frequently used where the conditional tense would be more correct.

Remarks:
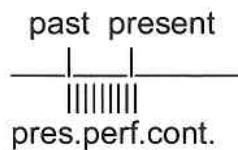
- Regular verbs ending in **ar** make the past imperfect tense by adding **ava/ávamos/avam** and verbs ending in **er/ir** by adding **ia/íamos/iam** to the stem. There are only a few irregular verbs in the past imperfect tense.
- The past imperfect is often used after words such as *antigamente* (in the past), *antes* (before), *naquela época/naquele tempo* (at that time), *quando* (when), *sempre* (always), etc., but keep in mind that there are other situations in which the past imperfect is required and these words are not necessarily used.
- In many situations the past imperfect tense is equivalent to *used to* in English.
- The past imperfect is very often confused with the simple past because when translated into English, there is sometimes no difference. Be aware that these tenses are not interchangeable. There are only a few situations in which either tense could be used, but in Portuguese they differ in meaning.

Portuguese	English
Antigamente ela **fumava** muito.	In the past she **used to smoke** a lot.
Quando eu **era** criança, eu **não gostava** de ir à escola.	When I **was** a child, I **did not like** to go to school.
Tinha/Havia muita gente na festa.	**There were** a lot of people at the party.
O livro **estava** na mesa.	The book **was** on the table.
Ele disse que **vinha** (instead of **viria**).	He said he **would come**.

Quando eu **era** criança, eu **gostava** de ler.
When I **was** a child, I **liked** to read.

1.6. Present perfect continuous (pretérito perfeito composto)

```
            past  present
    _____|___|_____
           |||||||||
         pres.perf.cont.
```
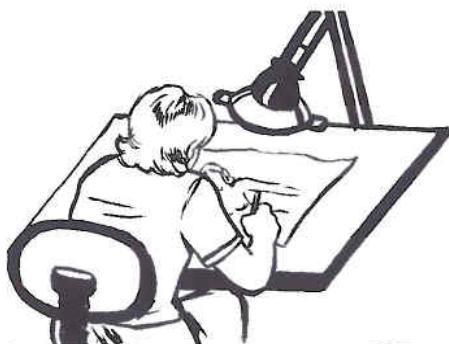
The present perfect continuous is **used to express an action that has been happening frequently recently or an action that began in the past and is still not concluded in the present time**.

Remarks:
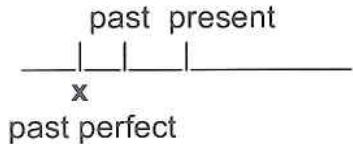
- The present perfect continuous tense is formed with the present tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).
- Note that in Portuguese the present perfect compound (pretérito perfeito composto) is equivalent in English to the present perfect continuous and sometimes to the present perfect tense.

Portuguese	English
Tenho falado com ele todos os dias.	I **have been talking** to him every day.
Tem chovido muito ultimamente.	It **has been raining** a lot lately.
O que você **tem feito** (ultimamente)?	What **have** you **been doing** (lately)?
Vocês **têm ido** ao clube?	**Have** you **been (going)** to the club?

Ele **tem trabalhado** muito ultimamente.
He **has been working** a lot lately.

1.7. Past perfect (pretérito mais-que-perfeito)

```
                    past  present
           ___|___|___|_____
                 x
              past perfect
```

The past perfect is used to express an action in the past prior to another past action. There are two past perfect tenses (a compound and a simple form) in Portuguese and both have exactly the same meaning. The compound form is more frequently used and the simple form is restricted to the written language, sometimes in newspapers but mainly in literary texts.

1.7.1. Compound form

Portuguese	English
Você já **tinha bebido** caipirinha?	**Had** you already **drunk** caipirinha?
Eu nunca **tinha vindo** aqui antes.	I **had** never **come** here before.
Ele perguntou se nós **tínhamos gostado** da festa.	He asked if we **had enjoyed** the party.
Quando cheguei lá, ele já **tinha saído**.	When I got there, he **had** already **left**.

Remark: The compound form is formed with the past tense (imperfect) of the auxiliary verb *ter* or *haver* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido). The use of *haver* (havia/havia/havíamos/haviam) is restricted to the written language.

1.7.2. Simple form

Portuguese	English
Você já **bebera** caipirinha?	**Had** you already **drunk** caipirinha?
Eu nunca **viera** aqui antes.	I **had** never **come** here before.
Ele perguntou se nós **gostáramos** da festa.	He asked if we **had enjoyed** the party.
Quando cheguei lá, ele já **saíra**.	When I got there, he **had** already **left**.

Remark: The simple form is formed from the 3rd person plural of the simple past tense. e.g. eles **foram** > drop **m** > **fôra/fôra/fôramos/foram**.

Eu nunca **tinha tomado** caipirinha antes.
I **had** never **drunk** *caipirinha* before.

1.8. Simple future (futuro do presente simples)

```
                    present
        _____|___|_____
                   future
```

The simple future is **used to express an action that happens in the immediate, near or remote future**. The simple future is equivalent to **will**, **shall** or **going to** in English. It is used to express any future action, regardless of whether the action is premeditated or not. There are **two future tenses** in Portuguese, **a compound and a simple form**. Both forms have exactly the same meaning, but the compound form is more frequently used in both speech and in the written language. The simple form is not used in ordinary conversation. It can be found in newspapers. Its use is formal and restricted to the written language.

1.8.1. Compound form

Portuguese	English
Ele **vai viajar** amanhã.	He **will/is going to travel** tomorrow.
O que você **vai fazer** hoje à noite?	What **are you going to do** tonight?
Eu **vou pedir** um sanduíche.	I **will/am going to order** a sandwich.

Remark: The compound form is formed with the present tense of the auxiliary verb *ir* (to go) + the infinitive. All verbs can be used in the simple future except for verb *ir* (to go). e.g. **Vou** (never **vou ir**, which is wrong) ao cinema. (I **am going** to the movies.)

1.8.2. Simple form
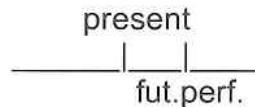
Portuguese	English
Ele **viajará** amanhã.	He **will/is going to travel** tomorrow.
O que você **fará** hoje à noite?	What **are you going to do** tonight?
Eu **pedirei** um sanduíche.	I **will/am going to order** a sandwich.

Remark: The simple form is formed by adding **ei/á/emos/ão** to the infinitive. If a verb ends in **zer** like *fazer*, **ze** must dropped before adding the future endings. e.g. fazer > far > farei/fará/faremos/farão.

Ele **vai pedir** duas cervejas.
He **will order** two beers.

1.9. Future perfect (futuro do presente composto)

```
                        present
            _____|____|_____
                     fut.perf.
```
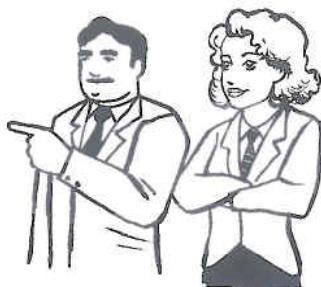
The future perfect tense is **used to express a completed action in the future, that is, an action, which at a given future time, will be in the past**. The future perfect tense can be found in the written language, but is rare.

Remark: The future perfect tense is formed with the simple future tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).

Portuguese	English
Amanhã a esta hora eu já **terei chegado** ao Brasil.	Tomorrow at this time I **will have** already **arrived** in Brazil.
Até o final do curso vocês **terão aprendido** todos os verbos irregulares.	By the end of the course you **will have learned** all the irregular verbs.
Em um ano nós **teremos economizado** bastante.	In a year we **will have saved** a lot.

Remark: In colloquial Portuguese, the future perfect is usually replaced with the simple past tense, which is **incorrect**.

Portuguese	English
Amanhã a esta hora eu já **cheguei** ao Brasil.	Tomorrow at this time I already **arrived** (**will have arrived**) in Brazil.

Em um ano eu já **terei vendido** aquelas casas.
In a year I **will have sold** those houses.

1.10. Present conditional (futuro do pretérito simples)

When used:
a) would/could/should
b) if-clause + would
c) past + would
d) probability in the past

The present conditional tense is **used in conditional sentences to express unreal situations**. It is **also used to express a polite request, a wish or an advice**; **in reported speech** introduced by a verb in the simple past tense as a past equivalent of the future tense and **to express probability in the past**.

Remarks:

- The present conditional tense is formed by adding **ia/ia/íamos/iam** to the infinitive. If a verb ends in **zer** like *fazer*, **ze** must be dropped before adding the present conditional endings. e.g. fazer > far > faria/faria/faríamos/fariam.
- Conditional sentences have two parts: the if-clause and the main clause. The verb in the if-clause is in the imperfect subjunctive tense (falasse) and the verb in the main clause is in the present conditional tense (falaria). It does not matter which clause comes first.
- Note that English modal verbs (may, can, etc.) are treated like any ordinary verb in Portuguese.

Portuguese	English
Se eu tivesse tempo, eu **viajaria** mais.	If I had time, I **would travel** more.
O que você **faria** se você estivesse no meu lugar?	What **would** you **do** if you were in my place?
O senhor **poderia** me fazer um favor?	**Could** you do me a favor?
Eu **gostaria** de falar com o gerente.	I **would like** to talk to the manager.
Vocês **deveriam** falar com ele de novo.	You **should** talk to him again.
Ele me disse que **viria**.	He told me that he **would come**.
Ele me falou que ela me **ajudaria**.	He told me that she **would help** me.
Ela **deveria** ter 17 anos naquela época.	She **would/should** be 17 at that time.

A senhora **poderia** repetir seu nome, por favor?
Could you repeat your name, please?

1.11. Perfect conditional (futuro do pretérito composto)
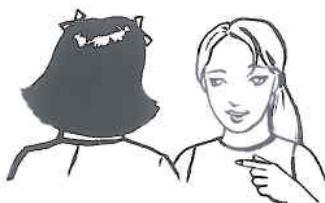
When used:
a) would/could/should + to have + past participle
b) if-clause in the past
c) past + would + to have + past participle
d) probability in the past

The perfect conditional, or past conditional, is **used to express an action that could have happened in the past, but did not happen**, that is, conditional sentences in the past.

Remarks:

- The perfect conditional tense is formed with the present conditional tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).
- Conditional sentences have two parts: the if-clause and the main clause. The verb in the if-clause is in the past perfect subjunctive tense (tivesse falado) or sometimes also in the imperfect subjunctive tense (falasse). The verb in the main clause is in the perfect conditional tense (teria falado). It does not matter which clause comes first.

Portuguese	English
O que você **teria feito** se você estivesse no meu lugar?	What **would** you **have done** if you were in my place?
Se eu fosse você, eu **teria aceitado** o convite.	If I were you I **would have accepted** the invitation.
Se ele tivesse tido tempo, ele **teria ido** com você.	If he had had time he **would have gone** with you.
Se eu soubesse eu **teria telefonado** para você.	Had I known I **would have called** you.

Por que você não falou comigo? Eu **teria** te **ajudado**.
Why didn't you talk to me? I **would have helped** you.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The subjunctive is **used to express an unsure or a possible fact, a wish, etc**. It is **mainly used in dependent clauses** often introduced by the conjunction *que* (that), but this does not mean that after any *que* you can use the subjunctive. The study of the subjunctive is for advanced students, but you can easily communicate without it at an early stage by using simple sentences that do not require the subjunctive. The subjunctive is difficult to understand because it is used differently in English and it doesn't correspond exactly in tense to the Portuguese tense. You will have to learn the subjunctive by heart because you cannot work it out by pure translation from the English form. The rules for using the subjunctive are very clear in Portuguese and once you know them, you should have no problem using it. The past and future subjunctive tenses are also used to express conditional sentences (if-clause).

Commonly used verbs and words that require the **present**, **continuous** and **past** subjunctive tenses.

Portuguese	English	Portuguese	English
verbs normally followed by *que*		**expressions**	
aconselhar	to advise	É .... que	It is .... that
acreditar	to believe	Foi/Era .... que	It was .... that
admitir	to admit	**conjunctions/adverbs**	
calcular	to calculate	caso	in case
desejar	to wish/desire	embora	although
duvidar	to doubt	talvez	perhaps
esperar	to hope	**conjunctions + que**	
estimar	to estimate	a menos que	unless
gostar	to like	a não ser que	unless
imaginar	to imagine	ainda que	even if
importar-se	to mind	antes que	before
necessitar	to need	até que	until
negar	to deny	basta que	it is enough
permitir	to allow	contanto que	provided that
precisar	to need	desde que	since/provided that
preferir	to prefer	mesmo que	even if
proibir	to prohibit	nem que	even if
propor	to propose	para que	in order to
querer	to want	pode ser que	maybe
recear	to fear	por mais que	no matter how much
recomendar	to recommend	tomara que	hopefully
sentir muito	to feel sorry	**relative pronouns**	
sugerir	to suggest	que	which
ter medo	to be afraid/fear	quem	who

Present, present continuous and present perfect subjunctive

Portuguese	English
Talvez chova.	Perhaps it will rain.
Talvez esteja chovendo.	Perhaps it is raining.
Talvez tenha chovido.	Perhaps it rained/has rained.

Imperfect, past continuous and past perfect subjunctive

Portuguese	English
Se chovesse, eu não iria.	If it rained/were to rain, I would not go.
Se estivesse chovendo, eu não iria.	If it were raining, I would not go.
Se tivesse chovido, eu não teria ido.	If it had rained, I would not have gone.

Commonly used words and phrases that require the future subjunctive tenses.

Portuguese	English
a hora que	at any time
assim que	as soon as
como	as
depois que	after
enquanto	as long as
logo que	as soon as
o que	what, whatever
onde/aonde/para onde	where, wherever
quando	when, whenever
quanto	as much as
quem	who, whoever
se	if
sempre que	always when

Future, future continuous and future perfect subjunctive

Portuguese	English
Se chover, eu não vou.	If it rains, I am not going.
Se estiver chovendo, eu não vou.	If it is raining, I am not going.
Se tiver chovido, eu não vou.	If it has rained, I am not going.

Remark: When you translate sentences using the subjunctive from Portuguese into English, you can use many different tenses in English. Remember that the subjunctive is used differently in English and it doesn't correspond exactly in tense to the Portuguese tense.

Tip: Think in Portuguese (not in English) when you use the subjunctive.

2.1. Present subjunctive (presente do subjuntivo)

When used:
a) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
b) sentences beginning with *É … que* (It's … that)
c) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The present subjunctive tense is **used to express a certain attitude (doubt, desire, fear, etc.) of the speaker towards a statement**. It is **mainly used in dependent clauses** often introduced by the conjunction *que (that)*.

Remarks:

- Regular verbs ending in **ar** make the present subjunctive tense by adding **e/emos/em** and verbs ending in **er/ir** by adding **a/amos/am** to the stem.
- Irregular verbs make the present subjunctive tense from the present indicative, 1st person singular, by dropping **o** and adding present subjunctive endings. e.g. faço > faç > faça/façamos/façam. Note that there are a few irregular verbs, which are completely irregular and do not follow this rule. They have to be practiced until they come naturally.
- Because the present subjunctive is formed from the present indicative, irregular verbs in the present indicative are also irregular in the present subjunctive.
- In Brazil, the present subjunctive tense is rarely used correctly in speech. Many people use the present indicative tense e.g. Você quer que eu **falo** com ele? instead of the present subjunctive tense e.g. Você quer que eu **fale** com ele? (Do you want me **to talk** to him?).

The present subjunctive should not be confused with the present indicative. The subject pronouns of the main and dependent clause are usually different in the present subjunctive tense.

present	Portuguese	English
indicative	**Eu quero ficar** aqui.	**I want to stay** here.
subjunctive	**Eu quero que você fique** aqui.	**I want you to stay** here. **I wish that you stay** here.

The imperative and the present subjunctive are identical because both are formed from the present indicative, but the rules for using them are completely different.

mood/tense	Portuguese	English
imperative	**Fale** mais alto, por favor.	**Speak** louder, please.
pres.subjunctive	Quero que você **fale** mais alto.	I want you **to speak** louder.

Portuguese	English
Você quer que eu **fale** com ele?	Do you want me **to talk** to him?
Espero que **não chova** hoje à noite.	I hope that **it will not rain** tonight.
Calcula-se que o prejuízo **chegue** a R$1.000.	They calculate that the damage **will reach** R$1,000.
É possível que eles **cheguem** hoje.	It is possible that they **arrive** today.
É uma pena que vocês **não possam** ir.	It is a pity that you **cannot go**.
Talvez eu **não vá** mais ao Brasil.	Perhaps I **will** no longer **go** to Brazil.
Tomara que ele **volte** logo.	Hopefully he **will come back** soon.

Talvez ele **viaje** para o Brasil nas férias.
Perhaps he **will travel** to Brazil on holiday.

2.2. Present perfect subjunctive (pretérito perfeito do subjuntivo)
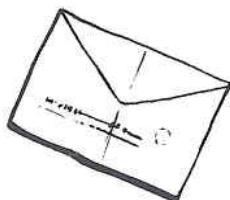
When used:
a) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
b) sentences beginning with *É ... que* (It's ... that)
c) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The present perfect subjunctive tense is **used to express a possible completed action in the past**. It is **used under the same circumstances as the present subjunctive tense**, that is, with certain verbs, expressions, adverbs and conjunctions. It is used as a past equivalent of the present subjunctive tense.

Remark: The present perfect subjunctive tense is formed with the present subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).

Portuguese	English
Duvido que ele já **tenha chegado**.	I doubt that he **has** already **arrived**.
Espero que eles **tenham** me telefonado.	I hope that they **have called** me.
É possível que eles **tenham saído**.	It is possible that they **have left**.
Talvez ela **não tenha tido** tempo.	Perhaps she **has not had** time.

Talvez a carta **tenha extraviado**.
Maybe the letter **has been lost**.
(literally **has got lost**)

2.3. Present continuous subjunctive (presente contínuo do subjuntivo)

When used:
a) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
b) sentences beginning with *É ... que* (It's ... that)
c) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The present continuous subjunctive tense is **used to express a possible action that is happening now or in a period around now**. It is **used under the same circumstances as the present subjunctive tense**, that is, with certain verbs, expressions, adverbs and conjunctions.

Remark: The present continuous subjunctive tense is formed with the present subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) + the present participle (ndo).

Portuguese	English
Duvido que ela **esteja viajando**.	I doubt that she **is travelling**.
É possível que **ele esteja dormindo**.	It is possible that he **is sleeping**.
Talvez eles **estejam trabalhando**.	Perhaps they **are working**.
Tomara que **não esteja chovendo**.	Hopefully **it is not raining**.

Talvez ele **não esteja se sentindo** bem.
Perhaps he **is not feeling** well.

2.4. Imperfect subjunctive (imperfeito do subjuntivo)
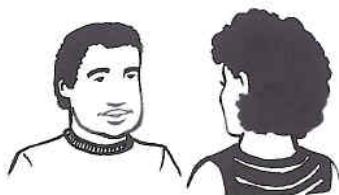
When used:
a) conditional tenses (if-clause)
b) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
c) sentences beginning with *Foi/Era ... que* (It was... that)
d) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The imperfect subjunctive tense is **used to express conditional sentences**. It is **also used in the same situations as in the present subjunctive tense**, but the verb of the main clause must be in the past tense (any past tense) or in the conditional tense.

Remarks:

- Regular verbs make the imperfect subjunctive tense by droping **r** from the infinitive and adding **sse/ssemos/ssem** to it. e.g. falar > fala > falasse.
- Irregular verbs make the imperfect subjunctive tense from the simple past, 3rd person plural, by dropping **ram** and adding imperfect subjunctive endings. e.g. eles foram > fo > fosse/fôssemos/fossem.
- Conditional sentences have two parts: the if-clause and the main clause. The verb in the if-clause is in the imperfect subjunctive tense (falasse) and the verb in the main clause is in the present conditional tense (falaria). It does not matter which clause comes first.

Portuguese	English
O que você faria se você **ganhasse** na loto?	What would you do if you **won** the lotto?
Meus pais queriam que eu **fizesse** medicina.	My parents wanted me **to study** medicine.
Estava com medo (de) que você **não viesse** mais.	I was afraid that you **would not come** any more.
Era possível que eles me **ligassem**.	It was possible that they **would call** me.
Gostaria que vocês **fossem** comigo.	I would like you **to go** with me.
Talvez ele **quisesse** ficar aqui.	Maybe he **wanted** to stay here.
A empresa queria uma pessoa que **falasse** inglês.	The company wanted a person who **spoke** English.

O que você faria, se você **estivesse** no meu lugar?
What would you do, if you **were** in my place?

2.5. Past perfect subjunctive (mais-que-perfeito do subjuntivo)

When used:
a) conditional tenses (if-clause)
b) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
c) sentences beginning with *Foi/Era … que* (It was… that)
d) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The past perfect subjunctive is **used to express an unreal situation that could have happened in the past. It is an if-clause in the past.**

Remarks:

- The past perfect subjunctive tense is formed with the imperfect subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).
- Conditional sentences have two parts: the if-clause and the main clause. The verb in the if-clause is in the past perfect subjunctive tense (tivesse falado) and the verb in the main clause is in the perfect conditional tense (teria falado). It does not matter which clause comes first.

Portuguese	English
O que você teria feito se você **tivesse ganhado** na loto?	What would you have done if you **had won** the lotto?
Gostaria que você **tivesse** me **avisado**.	I wish you **had informed** me.
Se eu **tivesse tido** tempo, eu teria viajado com você.	If I **had had** time, I would have travelled with you.

Se ele **tivesse estudado**, ele teria passado no exame.
If he **had studied**, he would have passed the exam.

2.6. Past continuous subjunctive (passado contínuo do subjuntivo)

When used:
a) conditional tenses (if-clause)
b) verbs of doubt, request, hope, desire, emotion, fear, approval, permission, etc.
c) sentences beginning with *Foi/Era ... que* (It was... that)
d) after certain conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns *(perhaps, in case, hopefully, maybe, which, even if, provided, etc.)*

The past continuous subjunctive is **used to express conditional sentences**, that is, if-clauses in the progressive. It is **also used in the same situations as presented in the present subjunctive**, but the verb of the main clause must be in the past tense (any past tense) or in the present conditional tense.

Remark: The past continuous subjunctive tense is formed with the imperfect subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) + the present participle (ndo).

Portuguese	English
Se ele **estivesse trabalhando** hoje, você poderia falar com ele.	If he **were working** today, you could talk to him.
Talvez eles **estivessem** só **conversando**.	Maybe they **were** just **talking**.
Pensei que você **estivesse viajando**.	I thought that you **were travelling**.

Talvez ele **estivesse** só **descansando**.
Maybe he **was** only **taking a rest**.

2.7. Future subjunctive (futuro simples do subjuntivo)
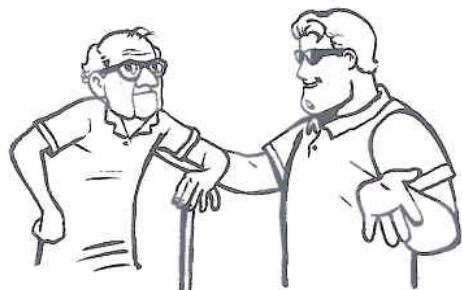
> **When used:**
> After certain words like *if, when, as soon as, whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever*, etc.

The future subjunctive is **used in dependent clauses to express a possible action in the future**.

Remarks:

- Regular verbs make the future subjunctive tense by adding **mos/em** to the infinitive. e.g. falar/falar/falar**mos**/falar**em**.
- Irregular verbs make the future subjunctive tense from the simple past tense, 3rd person plural, by dropping **am** and adding **mos/em** to it. e.g. for**am** > for/for/for**mos**/for**em**.

Portuguese	English
Quando eu **for** para o Brasil, eu ligo para você.	When I **go** to Brazil, I will call you.
Vamos à praia se **não chover**.	We will go to the beach if **it does not rain**.
Podemos ir aonde você **quiser**.	We can go wherever you **wish**.

Podemos ir embora quando o senhor **quiser**.
We can leave whenever you **wish**.

2.8. Future perfect subjunctive (futuro composto do subjuntivo)

When used:
After certain words like *if, when, as soon as, whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever*, etc.

The future perfect subjunctive is **used in dependent clauses to express a completed possible action in the future**, but it is **rarely used in speech**. The future **perfect is used under the same circumstances as the future subjunctive**, that is, after certain words.

Remarks:

- The future perfect subjunctive tense is formed with the future subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).
- Note that the future perfect subjunctive is usually equivalent to the present perfect in English.

Portuguese	English
Avise-me assim que ele **tiver chegado**.	Inform me as soon as he **has arrived**.
Vamos viajar quando você **tiver terminado** o curso.	We will travel when you **have finished** the course.
Não vou sair enquanto eu **não tiver falado** com ele.	I will not leave until I have talked to him. (literally I will not leave **as long as I have not talked** to him.)

Eu te ligo assim que eu **tiver falado** com ele.
I will call you as soon as I **have talked** to him.

2.9. Future continuous subjunctive (futuro contínuo do subjuntivo)
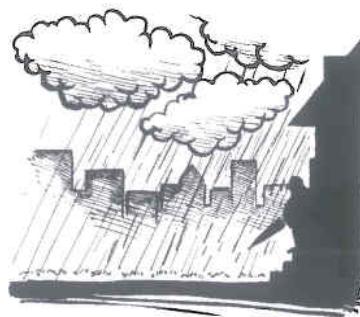
When used:
After certain words like *if, when, as soon as, whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever*, etc.

The future continuous subjunctive is **used in dependent clauses to express a possible progressive action in the future**. It is **used under the same circumstances as the future subjunctive**, that is, after certain words.

Remark: The future continuous subjunctive tense is formed with the future subjunctive tense of the auxiliary verb *estar* (to be) + the present participle (ndo).

Portuguese	English
Vamos à praia se **não estiver chovendo**.	We will go to the beach if **it is not raining**.
Se ele **estiver dormindo**, não tem problema.	If he **is sleeping**, it is no problem.
Eu ligo para você quando as crianças **estiverem dormindo**.	I will call you when the children **are sleeping**.

Se **estiver chovendo**, nós não vamos sair.
If **it is raining**, we will not go out.

3. IMPERATIVE MOOD

The imperative is **used to express a command or request**. It is **frequently used in advertisements, instruction manuals and recipes**.

Remarks:

- Regular verbs ending in **ar** make the imperative by adding **e/emos/em** and verbs ending in **er/ir** by adding **a/amos/am** to the stem.
- Irregular verbs make the imperative from the present indicative, 1st person singular, by dropping **o** and adding imperative endings. e.g. faço > faç > faça/faça/faça/façamos/façam. Note that there are a few irregular verbs, which are completely irregular and do not follow this rule.
- In Portuguese, there are **two singular forms to express the imperative**: *fala* (colloquial/spoken) and *fale* (written/spoken). Even though *fala* is grammatically incorrect because it refers to the subject pronoun *tu*, not to the subject pronoun *você*, it is widely used in speech. If *tu* is used instead of *você*, this form would be perfectly correct, but *tu* is rarely heard in Brazil today. Note that the colloquial form (fala) used in the imperative is the **same form** used in the 2nd person **of the present indicative** (e.g. eu falo, **você fala**, etc.) *Fale* is more frequently used in the written language, but it can also be used in speech. Usually only those people who speak Portuguese correctly use this form in speech.
- The 1st person plural (**falemos**) is considered very formal and rarely used in modern Portuguese except for *vamos* (let's go) which is frequently used in speech and a few other verbs like *dizer* > *digamos* (to say > let's say), etc.
- Subject pronouns are always omitted in the imperative, but the person addressed can be mentioned in the beginning or at the end of the phrase. e.g. *Espera, Paulo/meninas/mãe.* (Wait, Paul/girls/mother.)
- Because the imperative is formed from the present indicative, **irregular verbs in the present indicative are also irregular in the imperative**.
- The imperative and the present subjunctive are **identical** because both of them are formed from the present indicative, but the rules for using them are completely different.

Portuguese	English
Beba Coca-Cola!	**Drink** Coca-Cola!
Fale/Fala mais alto.	**Speak** louder.
Assine/Assina aqui, por favor.	**Sign** here, please.

Psiu! **Não façam** barulho!
Shhh! **Don't make** noise!

4. INFINITIVE

4.1. Personal infinitive (infinitivo pessoal)

> **When used:**
> a) after prepositions
> b) with a few verbs like *to see, to allow, to hear*, etc.
> c) in sentences beginning with *É .. que* (It is..) instead of the present subjunctive

The personal infinitive is **a particular feature of the Portuguese language**. It is a tense in Portuguese and as such it is conjugated as any other verb. Both the personal and impersonal infinitive can be confused sometimes, but if the plural form can replace the singular form, it is clearly a personal infinitive. Don't confuse the personal infinitive tense with the future subjunctive tense (regular verbs are identical in both tenses). Note that the rules for using the personal infinitive and the future subjunctive are completely different. All verbs are regular in the personal infinitive while in the future subjunctive verbs can be regular or irregular. The personal infinitive is often used to replace the present subjunctive, mainly in sentences beginning with *É/Foi/Era... que* (It is/was... that), but *que* must be eliminated.

4.1.1. Simple form

Portuguese	English
Vamos embora antes de eles **chegarem**.	Let's go before they **arrive**.
Eu não ouvi vocês me **chamarem**.	I did not hear you **call** me.
É melhor nós **irmos** embora.	It is better we **leave**.

Remark: Regular and irregular verbs make the simple form by adding **mos/em** to the infinitive. e.g. falar/falar/falarmos/falarem.

4.1.2. Compound form

Portuguese	English
Estou contente por vocês **terem vindo**.	I am happy because you **have come**.
Foi melhor eles **terem voltado** cedo.	It was better they **came back** early.

Remark: The compound form is formed with the personal infinitive of the auxiliary verb ter (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido).

Acho melhor nós **telefonarmos** para ele.
I think it is better we **call** him.

137

4.2. Impersonal infinitive (infinitivo impessoal)

> **When used:**
> a) alone
> b) after the main or the auxiliary verb
> c) after prepositions

The infinitive (or impersonal infinitive) is the verb in its simplest form, as found in a dictionary. Be aware that sometimes the infinitive is equivalent to the present participle in English. In Portuguese, the infinitive (not the gerund) is used after prepositions.

4.2.1. Simple form

Portuguese	English
Caminhar é bom.	**Walking/To walk** is good.
Quero **falar** com você.	I want to **talk** to you.
Vou **pedir** uma salada.	I will **order** a salad.
Gostaria de **falar** com o gerente.	I would like to **talk** to the manager.
Ao **ouvir** a notícia ela ficou triste.	On **hearing** the news she became sad.
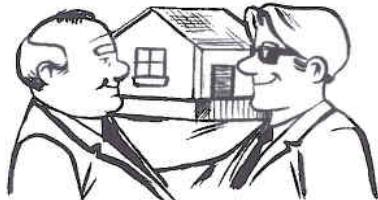
Ele não está. Você quer **deixar** recado?
He is not in. Would you like to **leave** a message?

4.2.2. Compound form

Portuguese	English
Você devia **ter pedido** um sorvete.	You should **have ordered** an ice cream.
Vocês poderiam **ter ido** com a gente.	You could **have gone** with us.

Remark: The infinitive (compound) is formed with the auxiliary verb ter (to have) + the past participle (ado/ido) and it is invariable.

Ele deveria **ter comprado** um apartamento.
He should **have bought** an apartment.

5. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE

A verb can be used in two different ways, that is, in the **active or passive voice**. In the active voice **the subject does the action** while in the passive voice **the subject has the action done to it**.

voice	Portuguese	English
active	O médico **me examinou**.	The doctor **examined** me.
passive	**Eu fui examinado** pelo médico.	**I was examined** by the doctor.

The active voice is more frequently used than the passive voice. The passive voice is more often used in the written language. The passive voice is often shortened in the written language, by showing only the past participle.

Portuguese	English
(foi) impresso no Brasil	(it was) **printed** in Brazil
(foi) produzido no Brasil	(it was) **made** in Brazil
uma agência **localizada** no centro	a branch **located** in the center
um homem **considerado** honesto	a man **considered** honest
a festa **organizada** pela escola	the party **organized** by the school
o programa **proposto** pelo partido	the program **proposed** by the party

Remarks:

- The passive voice is formed with the auxiliary verb *ser* (to be) + the past participle, which unlike in English, varies in gender (examinado/examinada) and in number (examinados/examinadas) in Portuguese.
- In a passive sentence, the agent or the doer of the action is usually omitted, but when the agent is mentioned, it is preceded by the preposition by (por) which in Portuguese, varies in gender (pelo/pela) and in number (pelos/pelas).
- The passive voice can be used in all tenses, but it is commonly used in the present, simple past and future tense.
- Usually only verbs which require a direct object pronoun (who?/what?) can be used in the passive voice.
- Past participles can be regular or irregular. Regular participles end in **ado/ido**. Irregular participles are a few and the most frequently used ones come naturally after some practice.
- In Portuguese, there are a few verbs, which have two past participles, a regular one and an irregular one. The **irregular one is used in the passive voice** and the **regular one in the active voice** with the auxiliary verb *ter* (to have) to form perfect tenses. To make the study of irregular past participles easier, there is a list of irregular past participles used with the passive voice on the next page.

5.1. Regular past participles used with the passive voice

Regular participles are made by dropping **ar** and adding **ado** to verbs ending in **ar** and by dropping **er/ir** and adding **ido** to verbs ending in **er/ir**.

Portuguese			English	
verb	masculine	feminine	verb	participle
publicar	publicado(s)	publicada(s)	to publish	published
vender	vendido(s)	vendida(s)	to sell	sold
traduzir	traduzido(s)	traduzida(s)	to translate	translated

5.2. Irregular past participles used with the passive voice
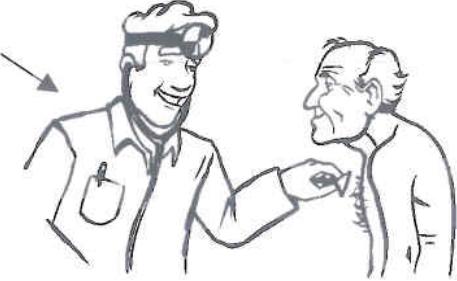
Portuguese			English	
verb	masculine	feminine	verb	participle
aceitar	aceito(s)	aceita(s)	to accept	accepted
abrir	aberto(s)	aberta(s)	to open	opened
acender	aceso(s)	acesa(s)	to light	lit
cobrir	coberto(s)	coberta(s)	to cover	covered
descobrir	descoberto(s)	descoberta(s)	to discover	discovered
dizer	dito(s)	dita(s)	to say	said
eleger	eleito(s)	eleita(s)	to elect	elected
entregar	entregue(s)	entregue(s)	to deliver	delivered
enxugar	enxuto(s)	enxuta(s)	to dry	dried
escrever	escrito(s)	escrita(s)	to write	written
exprimir	expresso(s)	expressa(s)	to express	expressed
expulsar	expulso(s)	expulsa(s)	to expel	expelled
fazer	feito(s)	feita(s)	to make, to do	made, done
ganhar	ganho(s)	ganha(s)	to win	won
gastar	gasto(s)	gasta(s)	to spend	spent
imprimir	impresso(s)	impressa(s)	to print	printed
limpar	limpo(s)	limpa(s)	to clean	cleaned
matar	morto(s)	morta(s)	to kill	killed
pagar	pago(s	paga(s)	to pay	paid
pegar	pego(s)	pega(s)	to catch	caught
pôr	posto(s)	posta(s)	to put	put
prender	preso(s)	presa(s)	to arrest, to tie	arrested, tied
salvar	salvo(s)	salva(s)	to save	saved
soltar	solto(s)	solta(s)	to release	released
suspender	suspenso(s)	suspensa(s)	to suspend	suspended
ver	visto(s)	vista(s)	to see	seen

Remark: The most useful irregular past participles are in this list.
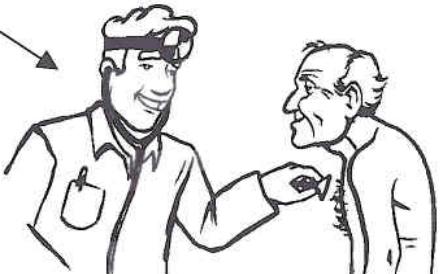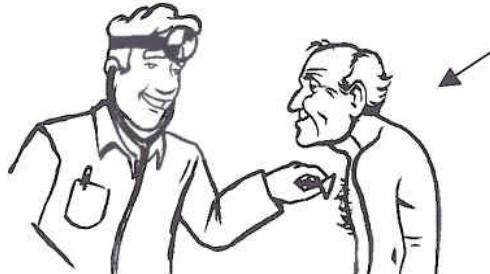
5.3. Active voice versus passive voice

To form the passive of an active tense, put the verb *to be* (ser) into the same tense as the active verb and add the past participle of the active verb.

5.3.1. Indicative mood

active voice	passive voice
O médico **examina** o paciente. The doctor **examines** the patient.	O paciente **é examinado** pelo médico. The patient **is examined** by the doctor.
O médico **está examinando**… The doctor **is examining**…	O paciente **está sendo examinado**… The patient **is being examined**…
O médico **examinou**... The doctor **(has) examined**...	O paciente **foi examinado**... The patient **was/has been examined**...
O médico **examinava**.... The doctor **used to examine**…	O paciente **era examinado**… The patient **used to be examined**…
O médico **estava examinando**… The doctor **was examining**…	O paciente **estava sendo examinado**... The patient **was being examined**…
O médico **vai examinar**... The doctor **will examine**… The doctor **is going to examine**…	O paciente **vai ser examinado**… The patient **will be examined**... The patient **is going to be examined**…
O médico **examinará**... The doctor **will examine**... The doctor **is going to examine**...	O paciente **será examinado**... The patient **will be examined**... The patient **is going to be examined**...
O médico **examinaria** o paciente. The doctor **would examine**...	O paciente **seria examinado**... The patient **would be examined**...
O médico **tem examinado**... The doctor **has been examining**…	O paciente **tem sido examinado**... The patient **has been examined**...
O médico **tinha examinado**... The doctor **had examined**...	O paciente **tinha sido examinado**… The patient **had been examined**...
O médico **terá examinado**... The doctor **will have examined**...	O paciente **terá sido examinado**... The patient **will have been examined**...
O médico **teria examinado**... The doctor would **have examined**…	O paciente **teria sido examinado**… The patient **would have been examined**...

5.3.2. Subjunctive mood

active voice	passive voice
Talvez o médico **examine** o paciente. Maybe the doctor **will examine** the patient.	Talvez o paciente **seja examinado** pelo médico. Maybe the patient **will be examined** by the doctor.
Talvez o médico **esteja examinando**… Maybe the doctor **is examining**…	Talvez o paciente **esteja sendo examinado**… Maybe the patient **is being examined**…
Talvez o médico **tenha examinado**… Maybe the doctor **has examined**…	Talvez o paciente **tenha sido examinado**… Maybe the patient **has been examined**.
Se o médico **examinasse**... If the doctor **examined**…	Se o paciente **fosse examinado**… If the patient **were examined**...
Se o médico **estivesse examinando**... If the doctor **were examining**...	Se o paciente **estivesse sendo examinado**… If the patient **were being examined**...
Se o médico **tivesse examinado**... If the doctor **had examined**...	Se o paciente **tivesse sido examinado** If the patient **had been examined**...
Quando o médico **examinar**... When the doctor **examines**…	Quando o paciente **for examinado**... When the patient **is examined**...
Quando o médico **estiver examinando**... When the doctor **is examining**...	Quando o paciente **estiver sendo examinado**... When the patient **is being examined**...
Quando o médico **tiver examinado**... When the doctor **has examined**...	Quando o paciente **tiver sido examinado**... When the patient **has been examined**...

Este livro **foi impresso** em Cingapura.
This book **was printed** in Singapore.

5.4. Stative passive

Some past participles can also be used as adjectives to express a state. Besides the verb *estar* (to be), there are a few verbs like *andar* (to be), *viver* (to be) and *ficar* (to get/become) which can also be used with past participles. Be aware that in Portuguese past participles used along with these verbs vary in gender (fechado/fechada) and in number (fechados/fechadas).

Portuguese	English
A televisão **está desligada**.	The TV **is off**.
A porta **está fechada**.	The door **is closed**.
Eles **estão preocupados**.	They are **worried**.
Ela **anda** muito **cansada**.	She **has been** very **tired** lately.
Ele **ficou chateado** comigo.	He **was upset** with me.

As malas estão **pesadas**.
The suitcases are **heavy**.

5.5. The passive voice and auxiliary verbs

The passive voice can also be used along with auxiliary verbs.

Portuguese	English
Todo (o) mundo **deve ser informado**.	Everybody **should be informed**.
Seu filho **precisa ser registrado**.	Your son **has to be registered**.

5.6. Use of passive voice in impersonal sentences

In Portuguese, the passive voice is also used in impersonal sentences. The pronoun *se* is used and the subject of the sentence is unknown.

Portuguese	English
Vende-**se** (esta casa).	(This house is) for sale.
Consertam-**se** (sapatos).	Shoes (are) repaired.
Aluga-**se** (este apartamento).	(This apartment is) for rent.

Aluga-**se** (esta casa).
(This house is) **for rent**.

6. DIRECT AND REPORTED SPEECH

Direct speech is used to report someone's exact words. Direct speech is often found in the written language and it is put inside inverted commas. **Reported speech, or indirect speech, is used to report someone's speech using your own words**. In reported speech the verb is in the past if the action is over, but in the present, future, or conditional, if the action is not over.

Remarks:

- In spoken Portuguese, the tense often remains unchanged.
- When turning direct speech into a reported speech, some changes (tenses, pronouns, adverbs of place and time, etc.) are necessary.

6.1. Direct speech

Portuguese	English
Ele disse:	**He said:**
- "Eu **estou** cansado."	- "I **am** tired."
- "Você **quer** café?"	- "**Do** you **want** coffee?"
- "Eu **não** te **vi**."	- "I did **not see** you."
- "Talvez eles **venham**."	- "Maybe they **will come**."
- "Se você **quiser**, eu **falo** com ela."	- "If you **want**, I **will talk** to her."
- "**Esperem** aqui."	- "**Wait** here."
- "**Liga** pra mim amanhã."	- "**Call me** tomorrow."
- "**Não se preocupe**."	- "**Don't worry**."

6.2. Reported speech

Portuguese	English
O que ele disse?	**What did he say?**
Ele disse que ele **está/estava** cansado.	He said that he **is/was** tired.
Ele me perguntou se eu **quero/queria** café.	He asked me if I **want/wanted** some coffee.
Ele disse que ele **não** me **viu/não tinha** me **visto**.	He said that he **did not see/had not seen** me.
Ele disse que talvez eles **venham/ viessem**.	He said that maybe they **will/would come**.
Ele disse que se eu **quiser/quisesse**, ele **fala/falaria** com ela.	He said that if I **want/wanted**, he **will/would talk** to her.
Ele falou para nós **esperarmos** aqui.	He told us **to wait** here.
Ele pediu para eu **ligar** pra ele depois.	He asked me **to call** him later.
Ele disse para eu **não me preocupar**.	He told me **not to worry**.

CHAPTER III – TABLES OF PORTUGUESE VERB CONJUGATIONS

In this chapter you will find models of verbs conjugated in all tenses used in Portuguese. To make the study of tenses easier, you will find below a list of all Portuguese tenses and their equivalent forms in English.
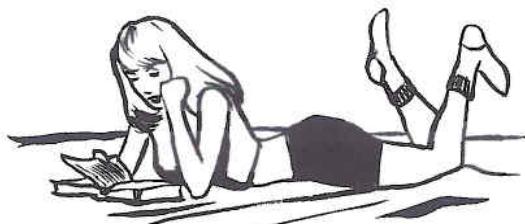
Portuguese	English
infinitivo impessoal	infinitive
infinitivo pessoal	personal infinitive (**not used in English**)
gerúndio	present participle
particípio	past participle
Modo indicativo	**Indicative mood**
presente	simple present
presente contínuo	present continuous
passado contínuo	past continuous
pretérito perfeito simples	simple past or present perfect
pretérito imperfeito	past imperfect or simple past
futuro do presente simples	simple future
futuro do pretérito simples	present conditional
pretérito perfeito composto	pres. perfect continuous or pres. perfect
pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples	past perfect simple (**not used in English**)
pretérito mais-que-perfeito comp.	past perfect compound
futuro do presente composto	future perfect
futuro do pretérito composto	perfect conditional
Modo subjuntivo	**Subjunctive mood** (different in English)
presente	simple present subjunctive
presente contínuo	present continuous subjunctive
pretérito perfeito	present perfect subjunctive
pretérito imperfeito	imperfect subjunctive
passado contínuo	past continuous subjunctive
pretérito mais-que-perfeito	past perfect subjunctive
futuro simples	simple future subjunctive
futuro contínuo	future continuous subjunctive
futuro composto	future perfect subjunctive
Modo imperativo	**Imperative mood** (command)

Português é mais fácil do que eu pensava.
Portuguese is easier than I thought.

Introductory remarks on verbs:

- The personal infinitive and the past perfect (simple form) do not have an equivalent in English.
- The subjunctive mood is used differently in English and it doesn't correspond exactly in tense to the Portuguese tense.
- Verbs ending in **ar** are the most common in Portuguese.
- **Regular verbs** are **more numerous** than irregular verbs.
- The **simple present** is the tense with the **most irregular verbs**.
- Most verbs are **stressed on the second last syllable** (fa**lo**/fa**lan**do), unless there is an accent elsewhere (fa**lá**vamos/fala**rá**) or they end in **r** (fa**lar**), **ei** (fa**lei**/fala**rei**), **ou** (fa**lou**), **i** (be**bi**), **eu** (be**beu**), **iu** (assis**tiu**), **ão** (fala**rão**) and **z** (pro**duz**).
- Most verbs ending in **ar/er** which have an **e** or **o** preceding the ending like *esperar* (to wait), *beber* (to drink), *morar* (to live) and *morrer* (to die) have sometimes an open pronunciation. e.g. esp**e**ro/esp**e**ra/esp**e**ram [**e** as in b**e**d] and m**o**ro/m**o**ra/m**o**ram [**o** as in l**a**w]. The same rule applies for tenses formed from the simple present tense, that is, the present subjunctive and imperative.
- The past perfect (pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples) is not included in the sample conjugations because it is rarely used.
- All irrregular forms are written in italic in the sample conjugations for easy of recognition.
- All conjugations are illustrated with some examples.

Ela sempre estuda no fim de semana.
She always studies on the weekend.

1. REGULAR VERBS

1.1. Verbs ending in ar

infinitive: falar (to speak)	pres.participle: falando	past participle: falado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu falo	estou falando	estava falando
você/ele/ela fala	está falando	estava falando
nós falamos	estamos falando	estávamos falando
vocês/eles/elas falam	estão falando	estavam falando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou falar	falei	falava
vai falar	falou	falava
vamos falar	falamos	falávamos
vão falar	falaram	falavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho falado	falarei	falaria
tem falado	falará	falaria
temos falado	falaremos	falaríamos
têm falado	falarão	falariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf. cond.**
tinha falado	terei falado	teria falado
tinha falado	terá falado	teria falado
tínhamos falado	teremos falado	teríamos falado
tinham falado	terão falado	teriam falado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
fale	falasse	falar
fale	falasse	falar
falemos	falássemos	falarmos
falem	falassem	falarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja falando	estivesse falando	estiver falando
esteja falando	estivesse falando	estiver falando
estejamos falando	estivéssemos falando	estivermos falando
estejam falando	estivessem falando	estiverem falando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha falado	tivesse falado	tiver falado
tenha falado	tivesse falado	tiver falado
tenhamos falado	tivéssemos falado	tivermos falado
tenham falado	tivessem falado	tiverem falado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
(você) fala/fale	falar	ter falado
	falar	ter falado
	falarmos	termos falado
(vocês) falem	falarem	terem falado

Portuguese	English
Você **fala** Português? **Falo**.	Do you **speak** Portuguese? **Yes, I do**.
Eu **falei** com o seu irmão ontem.	I **spoke** to your brother yesterday.
Fale mais devagar, por favor.	**Speak** more slowly, please.

1.2. Verbs ending in er

infinitive: beber (to drink)	pres.participle: bebendo	past participle: bebido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu bebo	estou bebendo	estava bebendo
você/ele/ela bebe	está bebendo	estava bebendo
nós bebemos	estamos bebendo	estávamos bebendo
vocês/eles/elas bebem	estão bebendo	estavam bebendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou beber	bebi	bebia
vai beber	bebeu	bebia
vamos beber	bebemos	bebíamos
vão beber	beberam	bebiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho bebido	beberei	beberia
tem bebido	beberá	beberia
temos bebido	beberemos	beberíamos
têm bebido	beberão	beberiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha bebido	terei bebido	teria bebido
tinha bebido	terá bebido	teria bebido
tínhamos bebido	teremos bebido	teríamos bebido
tinham bebido	terão bebido	teriam bebido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
beba	bebesse	beber
beba	bebesse	beber
bebamos	bebêssemos	bebermos
bebam	bebessem	beberem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja bebendo	estivesse bebendo	estiver bebendo
esteja bebendo	estivesse bebendo	estiver bebendo
estejamos bebendo	estivéssemos bebendo	estivermos bebendo
estejam bebendo	estivessem bebendo	estiverem bebendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha bebido	tivesse bebido	tiver bebido
tenha bebido	tivesse bebido	tiver bebido
tenhamos bebido	tivéssemos bebido	tivermos bebido
tenham bebido	tivessem bebido	tiverem bebido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	beber	ter bebido
(você) bebe/beba	beber	ter bebido
	bebermos	termos bebido
(vocês) bebam	beberem	terem bebido

Portuguese	English
O que você quer **beber**?	What would you like **to drink**?
Eu nunca **bebi** caipirinha.	I **have** never **drunk** caipirinha.
Estou com sede. **Vou beber** água.	I am thirsty. I **am going to drink** water.
Antigamente ele **bebia** muito.	In the past he **used to drink** a lot.

1.3. Verbs ending in ir

infinitive: assistir (to watch)	pres.participle: assistindo	past participle: assistido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu assisto	estou assistindo	estava assistindo
você/ele/ela assiste	está assistindo	estava assistindo
nós assistimos	estamos assistindo	estávamos assistindo
vocês/eles/elas assistem	estão assistindo	estavam assistindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou assistir	assisti	assistia
vai assistir	assistiu	assistia
vamos assistir	assistimos	assistíamos
vão assistir	assistiram	asssistiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho assistido	assistirei	assistiria
tem assistido	assistirá	assistiria
temos assistido	assistiremos	assistiríamos
têm assistido	assistirão	assistiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha assistido	terei assistido	teria assistido
tinha assistido	terá assistido	teria assistido
tínhamos assistido	teremos assistido	teríamos assistido
tinham assistido	terão assistido	teriam assistido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
assista	assistisse	asssistir
assista	assistisse	assistir
assistamos	assistíssemos	assistirmos
assistam	assistissem	assistirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja assistindo	estivesse assistindo	estiver assistindo
esteja assistindo	estivesse assistindo	estiver assistindo
estejamos assistindo	estivéssemos assistindo	estivermos assistindo
estejam assistindo	estivessem assistindo	estiverem assistindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha assistido	tivesse assistido	tiver assistido
tenha assistido	tivesse assistido	tiver assistido
tenhamos assistido	tivéssemos assistido	tivermos assistido
tenham assistido	tivessem assistido	tiverem assistido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	assistir	ter assistido
(você) assiste/assista	assistir	ter assistido
	assistirmos	termos assistido
(vocês) assistam	assistirem	terem assistido

Portuguese	English
Você gosta de **assistir** (à) televisão?	Do you like **to watch** television?
Eu quero **assistir** (a) este filme.	I want **to watch** this movie.
Nós **não assistimos** à novela ontem.	We **did not watch** the soap opera yesterday.
Vocês **vão assistir** às notícias?	Are you going to **watch** the news?

2. IRREGULAR VERBS

2.1. Irregular verbs ending in ar

2.1.1. Dar (to give)

infinitive: dar	pres.participle: dando	past participle: dado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *dou*	estou dando	estava dando
você/ele/ela *dá*	está dando	estava dando
nós damos	estamos dando	estávamos dando
vocês/eles/elas *dão*	estão dando	estavam dando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou dar	*dei*	dava
vai dar	*deu*	dava
vamos dar	*demos*	dávamos
vão dar	*deram*	davam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho dado	darei	daria
tem dado	dará	daria
temos dado	daremos	daríamos
têm dado	darão	dariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha dado	terei dado	teria dado
tinha dado	terá dado	teria dado
tínhamos dado	teremos dado	teríamos dado
tinham dado	terão dado	teriam dado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
dê	*desse*	*der*
dê	*desse*	*der*
demos	*déssemos*	*dermos*
dêem	*dessem*	*derem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja dando	estivesse dando	estiver dando
esteja dando	estivesse dando	estiver dando
estejamos dando	estivéssemos dando	estivermos dando
estejam dando	estivessem dando	estiverem dando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha dado	tivesse dado	tiver dado
tenha dado	tivesse dado	tiver dado
tenhamos dado	tivéssemos dado	tivermos dado
tenham dado	tivessem dado	tiverem dado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	dar	ter dado
(você) *dá/dê*	dar	ter dado
	darmos	termos dado
(vocês) *dêem*	darem	terem dado

Portuguese	English
Você **deu** o recado pra ele?	**Did** you **give** him the message?
Dá pra você me ligar mais tarde?	**Can** you call me later?

2.1.2. Estar (to be – temporary)

infinitive: estar	pres.participle: estando	past participle: estado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *estou* você/ele/ela *está* nós *estamos* vocês/eles/elas *estão*		
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou estar vai estar vamos estar vão estar	*estive* *esteve* *estivemos* *estiveram*	estava estava estávamos estavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho estado tem estado temos estado têm estado	estarei estará estaremos estarão	estaria estaria estaríamos estariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha estado tinha estado tínhamos estado tinham estado	terei estado terá estado teremos estado terão estado	teria estado teria estado teríamos estado teriam estado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
esteja *esteja* *estejamos* *estejam*	*estivesse* *estivesse* *estivéssemos* *estivessem*	*estiver* *estiver* *estivermos* *estiverem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha estado tenha estado tenhamos estado tenham estado	tivesse estado tivesse estado tivéssemos estado tivessem estado	tiver estado tiver estado tivermos estado tiverem estado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
(você) *esteja* (vocês) *estejam*	estar estar estarmos estarem	ter estado ter estado termos estado terem estado

Remark: *Estar* is the only verb that cannot be used in continuous tenses.

Portuguese	English
Onde **está** o meu livro? **Está** na mesa.	Where **is** my book? **It is** on the table.
Eu **estou** com fome.	I **am** hungry.
Ela **está** doente.	She **is** sick.
Está chovendo.	It **is** raining.

2.2. Irregular verbs ending in er

2.2.1. Caber (to fit in)

infinitive: caber	pres.participle: cabendo	past participle: cabido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
você/ele/ela cabe	está cabendo	estava cabendo
vocês/eles/elas cabem	estão cabendo	estavam cabendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vai caber	*coube*	cabia
vão caber	*couberam*	cabiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tem cabido	caberá	caberia
têm cabido	caberão	caberiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha cabido	terá cabido	teria cabido
tinham cabido	terão cabido	teriam cabido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
caiba	*coubesse*	*couber*
caibam	*coubessem*	*couberem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja cabendo	estivesse cabendo	estiver cabendo
estejam cabendo	estivessem cabendo	estiverem cabendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha cabido	tivesse cabido	tiver cabido
tenham cabido	tivessem cabido	tiverem cabido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	caber	ter cabido
	caberem	terem cabido

Remark: Caber can be conjugated completely, but it is normally used only in the 2nd person singular and 3rd person plural. It is not used in the imperative.

Portuguese	English
Não cabe mais nada na mala.	Nothing else **fits in** the suitcase.

2.2.2. Dizer (to say)

infinitive: dizer	pres.participle: dizendo	past participle: *dito*
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	pres.contínuo/pres.cont.	passado contínuo/past cont.
eu *digo*	estou dizendo	estava dizendo
você/ele/ela *diz*	está dizendo	estava dizendo
nós dizemos	estamos dizendo	estávamos dizendo
vocês/eles/elas dizem	estão dizendo	estavam dizendo
futuro/simple future	perfeito simples/simple past	imperfeito/past imperfect
vou dizer	*disse*	dizia
vai dizer	*disse*	dizia
vamos dizer	*dissemos*	dizíamos
vão dizer	*disseram*	diziam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	futuro simples/simple future	cond.simples/present cond.
tenho *dito*	*direi*	*diria*
tem *dito*	*dirá*	*diria*
temos *dito*	*diremos*	*diríamos*
têm *dito*	*dirão*	*diriam*
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	futuro composto/fut.perfect	cond.composto/perf.cond.
tinha *dito*	terei *dito*	teria *dito*
tinha *dito*	terá *dito*	teria *dito*
tínhamos *dito*	teremos *dito*	teríamos *dito*
tinham *dito*	terão *dito*	teriam *dito*
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	imperfeito/imperfect (se)	fut.simples/future (quando)
diga	*dissesse*	*disser*
diga	*dissesse*	*disser*
digamos	*disséssemos*	*dissermos*
digam	*dissessem*	*disserem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	passado cont./past cont.	futuro contínuo/future cont.
esteja dizendo	estivesse dizendo	estiver dizendo
esteja dizendo	estivesse dizendo	estiver dizendo
estejamos dizendo	estivéssemos dizendo	estivermos dizendo
estejam dizendo	estivessem dizendo	estiverem dizendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	mais-q/perfeito/past perfect	futuro composto/fut.perfect
tenha *dito*	tivesse *dito*	tiver *dito*
tenha *dito*	tivesse *dito*	tiver *dito*
tenhamos *dito*	tivéssemos *dito*	tivermos *dito*
tenham *dito*	tivessem *dito*	tiverem *dito*
Imperativo/Imperative	Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)	
	dizer	ter *dito*
(você) *diz/diga*	dizer	ter *dito*
	dizermos	termos *dito*
(vocês) *digam*	dizerem	terem *dito*

Remark: Irregular verb *dizer* can be replaced with the regular verb *falar* (to speak/to say).

Portuguese	English
O que você **disse**? **Não disse** nada.	What **did** you **say**? I **did not say** anything.
A situação está preta, **diz** ele.	The situation is very bad, he **says**.
Diga a ele pra me ligar de volta.	**Tell** him to call me back.
O que eles **disseram** pra você?	What **did** they **tell** you?

153

2.2.3. Fazer (to do, to make)

infinitive: fazer	pres.participle: fazendo	past participle: feito
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu faço	estou fazendo	estava fazendo
você/ele/ela faz	está fazendo	estava fazendo
nós fazemos	estamos fazendo	estávamos fazendo
vocês/eles/elas fazem	estão fazendo	estavam fazendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou fazer	fiz	fazia
vai fazer	fez	fazia
vamos fazer	fizemos	fazíamos
vão fazer	fizeram	faziam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho feito	farei	faria
tem feito	fará	faria
temos feito	faremos	faríamos
têm feito	farão	fariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha feito	terei feito	teria feito
tinha feito	terá feito	teria feito
tínhamos feito	teremos feito	teríamos feito
tinham feito	terão feito	teriam feito
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
faça	fizesse	fizer
faça	fizesse	fizer
façamos	fizéssemos	fizermos
façam	fizessem	fizerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja fazendo	estivesse fazendo	estiver fazendo
esteja fazendo	estivesse fazendo	estiver fazendo
estejamos fazendo	estivéssemos fazendo	estivermos fazendo
estejam fazendo	estivessem fazendo	estiverem fazendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha feito	tivesse feito	tiver feito
tenha feito	tivesse feito	tiver feito
tenhamos feito	tivéssemos feito	tivermos feito
tenham feito	tivessem feito	tiverem feito
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	fazer	ter feito
(você) faz/faça	fazer	ter feito
	fazermos	termos feito
(vocês) façam	fazerem	terem feito

Remark: *Fazer* is used in many verbal idioms and sometimes also as an impersonal verb. Verbs *satisfazer* (to satisfy), *refazer* (to do/make it again), etc. follow the model of *fazer*.

Portuguese	English
O que você **fez** no fim de semana?	What **did** you **do** over the weekend?
O que você pretende **fazer** no sábado?	What do you intend **to do** on Saturday?
Quanto tempo faz que você mora aqui?	**How long** have you been living here?

2.2.4. Haver (there is/are)

infinitive: haver	pres.participle: havendo	past participle: havido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
há	está havendo	estava havendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vai haver	*houve*	havia
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tem havido	haverá	haveria
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha havido	terá havido	teria havido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
haja	*houvesse*	*houver*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja havendo	estivesse havendo	estiver havendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha havido	tivesse havido	tiver havido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
haja	haver	ter havido

Remark: *Haver* can be conjugated completely, but it is normally used only in the singular form as an impersonal verb. In colloquial Portuguese, *haver* is often replaced with *ter*.

Portuguese	English
Há/Tem muitos estrangeiros aqui?	**Are there** many foreigners here?
Havia/Tinha muita gente na festa.	**There were** many people at the party.
Não houve/teve aula ontem.	**There was** no class yesterday.

2.2.5. Ler (to read)

infinitive: ler	pres.participle: lendo	past participle: lido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *leio*	estou lendo	estava lendo
você/ele/ela *lê*	está lendo	estava lendo
nós lemos	estamos lendo	estávamos lendo
vocês/eles/elas *lêem*	estão lendo	estavam lendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ler	li	lia
vai ler	leu	lia
vamos ler	lemos	líamos
vão ler	leram	liam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/present cond.**
tenho lido	lerei	leria
tem lido	lerá	leria
temos lido	leremos	leríamos
têm lido	lerão	leriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha lido	terei lido	teria lido
tinha lido	terá lido	teria lido
tínhamos lido	teremos lido	teríamos lido
tinham lido	terão lido	teriam lido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
leia	lesse	ler
leia	lesse	ler
leiamos	lêssemos	lermos
leiam	lessem	lerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja lendo	estivesse lendo	estiver lendo
esteja lendo	estivesse lendo	estiver lendo
estejamos lendo	estivéssemos lendo	estivermos lendo
estejam lendo	estivessem lendo	estiverem lendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha lido	tivesse lido	tiver lido
tenha lido	tivesse lido	tiver lido
tenhamos lido	tivéssemos lido	tivermos lido
tenham lido	tivessem lido	tiverem lido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ler	ter lido
(você) *lê/leia*	ler	ter lido
	lermos	termos lido
(vocês) *leiam*	lerem	terem lido

Remark: Verb *crer* (to believe) follows the model of *ler* (to read), however regular verbs *achar* (to think) and *acreditar* (to believe) are more frequently used than *crer*.

Portuguese	English
Você gosta de **ler**?	Do you like **to read**?
Que jornal você **lê**?	Which newspaper do you **read**?
Eu ainda **não li** o jornal de hoje.	I **have not read** today's newspaper yet.

2.2.6. Moer (to grind, to mince)

infinitive: moer	pres.participle: moendo	past participle: moído
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *môo*	estou moendo	estava moendo
você/ele/ela *mói*	está moendo	estava moendo
nós moemos	estamos moendo	estávamos moendo
vocês/eles/elas moem	estão moendo	estavam moendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou moer	moí	moía
vai moer	moeu	moía
vamos moer	moemos	moíamos
vão moer	moeram	moíam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho moído	moerei	moeria
tem moído	moerá	moeria
temos moído	moeremos	moeríamos
têm moído	moerão	moeriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha moído	terei moído	teria moído
tinha moído	terá moído	teria moído
tínhamos moído	teremos moído	teríamos moído
tinham moído	terão moído	teriam moído
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
moa	moesse	moer
moa	moesse	moer
moamos	moêssemos	moermos
moam	moessem	moerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja moendo	estivesse moendo	estiver moendo
esteja moendo	estivesse moendo	estiver moendo
estejamos moendo	estivéssemos moendo	estivermos moendo
estejam moendo	estivessem moendo	estiverem moendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha moído	tivesse moído	tiver moído
tenha moído	tivesse moído	tiver moído
tenhamos moído	tivéssemos moído	tivermos moído
tenham moído	tivessem moído	tiverem moído
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	moer	ter moído
(você) *mói*/moa	moer	ter moído
	moermos	termos moído
(vocês) moam	moerem	terem moído

Remark: There are only a few verbs, which follow the model of *moer*.

Portuguese	English
Você já **moeu** as castanhas?	**Have** you already **ground** the nuts?
Adoro carne **moída**.	I love **minced** meat.
Só compro café **moído**.	I only buy **ground** coffee.

2.2.7. Perder (to lose, to miss, to waste)

infinitive: perder	pres.participle: perdendo	past participle: perdido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *perco*	estou perdendo	estava perdendo
você/ele/ela perde	está perdendo	estava perdendo
nós perdemos	estamos perdendo	estávamos perdendo
vocês/eles/elas perdem	estão perdendo	estavam perdendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou perder	perdi	perdia
vai perder	perdeu	perdia
vamos perder	perdemos	perdíamos
vão perder	perderam	perdiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho perdido	perderei	perderia
tem perdido	perderá	perderia
temos perdido	perderemos	perderíamos
têm perdido	perderão	perderiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha perdido	terei perdido	teria perdido
tinha perdido	terá perdido	teria perdido
tínhamos perdido	teremos perdido	teríamos perdido
tinham perdido	terão perdido	teriam perdido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
perca	perdesse	perder
perca	perdesse	perder
percamos	perdêssemos	perdermos
percam	perdessem	perderem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja perdendo	estivesse perdendo	estiver perdendo
esteja perdendo	estivesse perdendo	estiver perdendo
estejamos perdendo	estivéssemos perdendo	estivermos perdendo
estejam perdendo	estivessem perdendo	estiverem perdendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha perdido	tivesse perdido	tiver perdido
tenha perdido	tivesse perdido	tiver perdido
tenhamos perdido	tivéssemos perdido	tivermos perdido
tenham perdido	tivessem perdido	tiverem perdido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	perder	ter perdido
(você) perde/*perca*	perder	ter perdido
	perdermos	termos perdido
(vocês) *percam*	perderem	terem perdido

Portuguese	English
Perdi meu relógio no clube.	I **lost** my watch at the club.
O Brasil **perdeu** o jogo.	Brazil **lost** the game.
Vamos! Senão nós vamos **perder** o ônibus.	Let's go! Otherwise we will **miss** the bus.
Não **perca** seu tempo com ele.	**Do not waste** your time with him.

158

2.2.8. Poder (can, may, to be able)

infinitive: poder	pres.participle: podendo	past participle: podido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *posso*	estou podendo	estava podendo
você/ele/ela pode	está podendo	estava podendo
nós podemos	estamos podendo	estávamos podendo
vocês/eles/elas podem	estão podendo	estavam podendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou poder	*pude*	podia
vai poder	*pôde*	podia
vamos poder	*pudemos*	podíamos
vão poder	*puderam*	podiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho podido	poderei	poderia
tem podido	poderá	poderia
temos podido	poderemos	poderíamos
têm podido	poderão	poderiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha podido	terei podido	teria podido
tinha podido	terá podido	teria podido
tínhamos podido	teremos podido	teríamos podido
tinham podido	terão podido	teriam podido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
possa	*pudesse*	*puder*
possa	*pudesse*	*puder*
possamos	*pudéssemos*	*pudermos*
possam	*pudessem*	*puderem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja podendo	estivesse podendo	estiver podendo
esteja podendo	estivesse podendo	estiver podendo
estejamos podendo	estivéssemos podendo	estivermos podendo
estejam podendo	estivessem podendo	estiverem podendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha podido	tivesse podido	tiver podido
tenha podido	tivesse podido	tiver podido
tenhamos podido	tivéssemos podido	tivermos podido
tenham podido	tivessem podido	tiverem podido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	poder	ter podido
	poder	ter podido
	podermos	termos podido
	poderem	terem podido

Remark: *Poder* is not used in the imperative.

Portuguese	English
Posso entrar?	**May** I come in?
Você **pode** me fazer um favor?	**Can** you do me a favor?
Se eu **puder**, eu vou ao churrasco.	If I **can**, I will go to the barbecue.
Pode deixar. Eu falo com ele.	**Leave it to me/Don't worry**. I will talk to him.

2.2.9. Querer (to want)

infinitive: querer	pres.participle: querendo	past participle: querido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu quero	estou querendo	estava querendo
você/ele/ela *quer*	está querendo	estava querendo
nós queremos	estamos querendo	estávamos querendo
vocês/eles/elas querem	estão querendo	estavam querendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou querer	*quis*	queria
vai querer	*quis*	queria
vamos querer	*quisemos*	queríamos
vão querer	*quiseram*	queriam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
	quererei	quereria
	quererá	quereria
	quereremos	quereríamos
	quererão	quereriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
queira	*quisesse*	*quiser*
queira	*quisesse*	*quiser*
queiramos	*quiséssemos*	*quisermos*
queiram	*quisessem*	*quiserem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja querendo	estivesse querendo	estiver querendo
esteja querendo	estivesse querendo	estiver querendo
estejamos querendo	estivéssemos querendo	estivermos querendo
estejam querendo	estivessem querendo	estiverem querendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	querer	ter querido
(você) *quer/queira*	querer	ter querido
	querermos	termos querido
(vocês) *queiram*	quererem	terem querido

Remark: Perfect tenses (ter + past participle) are not used.

Portuguese	English
O que você **quer** fazer amanhã?	What **would** you **like** to do tomorrow?
Vocês **querem** beber alguma coisa?	**Would** you **like** to drink something?
Eu **quero** falar com você depois.	I **want/would like** to talk to you afterwards.
Podemos ir embora quando você **quiser**.	We can leave whenever you **wish**.

2.2.10. Saber (to know, can)

infinitive: saber	pres.participle: sabendo	past participle: sabido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *sei*	estou sabendo	estava sabendo
você/ele/ela sabe	está sabendo	estava sabendo
nós sabemos	estamos sabendo	estávamos sabendo
vocês/eles/elas sabem	estão sabendo	estavam sabendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou saber	*soube*	sabia
vai saber	*soube*	sabia
vamos saber	*soubemos*	sabíamos
vão saber	*souberam*	sabiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
	saberei	saberia
	saberá	saberia
	saberemos	saberíamos
	saberão	saberiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
saiba	*soubesse*	*souber*
saiba	*soubesse*	*souber*
saibamos	*soubéssemos*	*soubermos*
saibam	*soubessem*	*souberem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja sabendo	estivesse sabendo	estiver sabendo
esteja sabendo	estivesse sabendo	estiver sabendo
estejamos sabendo	estivéssemos sabendo	estivermos sabendo
estejam sabendo	estivessem sabendo	estiverem sabendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	saber	ter sabido
(você) *sabe/saiba*	saber	ter sabido
	sabermos	termos sabido
(vocês) *saibam*	saberem	terem sabido

Remark: Perfect tenses (ter + past participle) are not used.

Portuguese	English
Você **sabia** que ele está no Brasil?	**Did** you **know** that he is in Brazil?
Eu **não sei** ainda.	I still **don't know**./I **don't know** yet.
Ela **sabe** cozinhar muito bem.	She **can/knows how to** cook very well.
Que eu saiba, eles estão de férias.	**So far as I know**, they are on holiday.

2.2.11. Ser (to be – permanent)

infinitive: ser	pres.participle: sendo	past participle: sido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *sou*	estou sendo	estava sendo
você/ele/ela *é*	está sendo	estava sendo
nós *somos*	estamos sendo	estávamos sendo
vocês/eles/elas *são*	estão sendo	estavam sendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ser	*fui*	*era*
vai ser	*foi*	*era*
vamos ser	*fomos*	*éramos*
vão ser	*foram*	*eram*
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho sido	serei	seria
tem sido	será	seria
temos sido	seremos	seríamos
têm sido	serão	seriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha sido	terei sido	teria sido
tinha sido	terá sido	teria sido
tínhamos sido	teremos sido	teríamos sido
tinham sido	terão sido	teriam sido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
seja	*fosse*	*for*
seja	*fosse*	*for*
sejamos	*fôssemos*	*formos*
sejam	*fossem*	*forem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja sendo	estivesse sendo	estiver sendo
esteja sendo	estivesse sendo	estiver sendo
estejamos sendo	estivéssemos sendo	estivermos sendo
estejam sendo	estivessem sendo	estiverem sendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha sido	tivesse sido	tiver sido
tenha sido	tivesse sido	tiver sido
tenhamos sido	tivéssemos sido	tivermos sido
tenham sido	tivessem sido	tiverem sido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ser	ter sido
(você) *seja*	ser	ter sido
	sermos	termos sido
(vocês) *sejam*	serem	terem sido

Portuguese	English
Você **é** brasileiro?	**Are** you Brazilian?
Nós **somos** da Espanha.	We **are** from Spain.
Onde **é** o correio?	Where **is** the post office?
Que horas **são** agora?	What time **is** it now?
Quando eu **era** jovem, eu **era** magro.	When I **was** young, I **was** slim.
Quando eu **for** para o Brasil, eu te ligo.	When I **go** to Brazil, I will call you.

2.2.12. Ter (to have)

infinitive: ter	pres.participle: tendo	past participle: tido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *tenho*	estou tendo	estava tendo
você/ele/ela *tem*	está tendo	estava tendo
nós temos	estamos tendo	estávamos tendo
vocês/eles/elas *têm*	estão tendo	estavam tendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ter	*tive*	*tinha*
vai ter	*teve*	*tinha*
vamos ter	*tivemos*	*tínhamos*
vão ter	*tiveram*	*tinham*
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho tido	terei	teria
tem tido	terá	teria
temos tido	teremos	teríamos
têm tido	terão	teriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha tido	terei tido	teria tido
tinha tido	terá tido	teria tido
tínhamos tido	teremos tido	teríamos tido
tinham tido	terão tido	teriam tido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
tenha	*tivesse*	*tiver*
tenha	*tivesse*	*tiver*
tenhamos	*tivéssemos*	*tivermos*
tenham	*tivessem*	*tiverem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja tendo	estivesse tendo	estiver tendo
esteja tendo	estivesse tendo	estiver tendo
estejamos tendo	estivéssemos tendo	estivermos tendo
estejam tendo	estivessem tendo	estiverem tendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha tido	tivesse tido	tiver tido
tenha tido	tivesse tido	tiver tido
tenhamos tido	tivéssemos tido	tivermos tido
tenham tido	tivessem tido	tiverem tido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ter	ter tido
(você) *tem/tenha*	ter	ter tido
	termos	termos tido
(vocês) *tenham*	terem	terem tido

Remark: *Conter* (contain), *manter* (to maintain), *obter* (to obtain) follow the model of *ter*.

Portuguese	English
O senhor **tem** filhos?	Do you **have** children?
Quantos anos ele **tem**?	How old **is** he?
Eu **tenho que** trabalhar amanhã.	I **have to** work tomorrow.
Eu **não tive** tempo hoje.	I **did not have** time today.

2.2.13. Trazer (to bring)

infinitive: trazer	pres.participle: trazendo	past participle: trazido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *trago*	estou trazendo	estava trazendo
você/ele/ela *traz*	está trazendo	estava trazendo
nós trazemos	estamos trazendo	estávamos trazendo
vocês/eles/elas trazem	estão trazendo	estavam trazendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou trazer	*trouxe*	trazia
vai trazer	*trouxe*	trazia
vamos trazer	*trouxemos*	trazíamos
vão trazer	*trouxeram*	traziam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho trazido	*trarei*	*traria*
tem trazido	*trará*	*traria*
temos trazido	*traremos*	*traríamos*
têm trazido	*trarão*	*trariam*
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha trazido	terei trazido	teria trazido
tinha trazido	terá trazido	teria trazido
tínhamos trazido	teremos trazido	teríamos trazido
tinham trazido	terão trazido	teriam trazido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
traga	*trouxesse*	*trouxer*
traga	*trouxesse*	*trouxer*
tragamos	*trouxéssemos*	*trouxermos*
tragam	*trouxessem*	*trouxerem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja trazendo	estivesse trazendo	estiver trazendo
esteja trazendo	estivesse trazendo	estiver trazendo
estejamos trazendo	estivéssemos trazendo	estivermos trazendo
estejam trazendo	estivessem trazendo	estiverem trazendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha trazido	tivesse trazido	tiver trazido
tenha trazido	tivesse trazido	tiver trazido
tenhamos trazido	tivéssemos trazido	tivermos trazido
tenham trazido	tivessem trazido	tiverem trazido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	trazer	ter trazido
(você) *traz/traga*	trazer	ter trazido
	trazermos	termos trazido
(vocês) *tragam*	trazerem	terem trazido

Remark: *Trazer* + *aqui* (to bring + here) is used to indicate a movement towards the speaker. The opposite *levar* + *lá* (to take + there) indicates a movement away from the speaker.

Portuguese	English
Garçom, **traga** mais uma cerveja, por favor.	Waiter, **bring** one beer more, please.
Por que você **não trouxe** as crianças?	Why **did** you **not bring** the children?
O que vocês **vão trazer**?	What **are** you **going to bring**?

2.2.14. Valer (to be worthwhile)

infinitive: valer	pres.participle: valendo	past participle: valido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
você/ele/ela vale	está valendo	estava valendo
vocês/eles/elas valem	estão valendo	estavam valendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vai valer	valeu	valia
vão valer	valeram	valiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tem valido	valerá	valeria
têm valido	valerão	valeriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha valido	terá valido	teria valido
tinham valido	terão valido	teriam valido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
valha	valesse	valer
valham	valessem	valerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja valendo	estivesse valendo	estiver valendo
estejam valendo	estivessem valendo	estiverem valendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha valido	tivesse valido	tiver valido
tenham valido	tivessem valido	tiverem valido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	valer	ter valido
	valerem	terem valido

Remark: Valer can be conjugated completely, but it is normally used only in the 2nd person and 3rd person singular and 3rd person plural. It is not used in the imperative.

Portuguese	English
Não vale a pena ir lá hoje.	**It is not worth** going there today.
Estas pedras **não valem** nada.	These stones **are not worth** anything.
Valeu!	**It was worthwhile.**

2.2.15. Ver (to see, to watch)

infinitive: ver	pres.participle: vendo	past participle: *visto*
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *vejo*	estou vendo	estava vendo
você/ele/ela *vê*	está vendo	estava vendo
nós vemos	estamos vendo	estávamos vendo
vocês/eles/elas *vêem*	estão vendo	estavam vendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ver	*vi*	via
vai ver	*viu*	via
vamos ver	*vimos*	*víamos*
vão ver	*viram*	viam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho *visto*	verei	veria
tem *visto*	verá	veria
temos *visto*	veremos	veríamos
têm *visto*	verão	veriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha *visto*	terei *visto*	teria *visto*
tinha *visto*	terá *visto*	teria *visto*
tínhamos *visto*	teremos *visto*	teríamos *visto*
tinham *visto*	terão *visto*	teriam *visto*
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
veja	*visse*	*vir*
veja	*visse*	*vir*
vejamos	*víssemos*	*virmos*
vejam	*vissem*	*virem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja vendo	estivesse vendo	estiver vendo
esteja vendo	estivesse vendo	estiver vendo
estejamos vendo	estivéssemos vendo	estivermos vendo
estejam vendo	estivessem vendo	estiverem vendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha *visto*	tivesse *visto*	tiver *visto*
tenha *visto*	tivesse *visto*	tiver *visto*
tenhamos *visto*	tivéssemos *visto*	tivermos *visto*
tenham *visto*	tivessem *visto*	tiverem *visto*
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ver	ter *visto*
(você) *vê/veja*	ver	ter *visto*
	vermos	termos *visto*
(vocês) *vejam*	verem	terem *visto*

Remark: Verbs *prever* (to forecast) and *rever* (to see again) follow the model of *ver*.

Portuguese	English
Eu **não vi** este filme ainda.	I **have not seen** this film yet.
Você **viu** minha caneta?	**Have** you **seen** my pen?
Vamos ver.	**Let's see**.
Ele **está vendo** televisão.	He **is watching** TV.

2.3. Irregular verbs ending in ir

2.3.1. Concluir (to conclude, to finish)

infinitive: concluir	pres.participle: concluindo	past participle: concluído
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu concluo	estou concluindo	estava concluindo
você/ele/ela *conclui*	está concluindo	estava concluindo
nós concluímos	estamos concluindo	estávamos concluindo
vocês/eles/elas concluem	estão concluindo	estavam concluindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou concluir	conclui	concluía
vai concluir	concluiu	concluía
vamos concluir	concluímos	concluíamos
vão concluir	concluíram	concluíam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho concluído	concluirei	concluiria
tem concluído	concluirá	concluiria
temos concluído	concluiremos	concluiríamos
têm concluído	concluirão	concluiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha concluído	terei concluído	teria concluído
tinha concluído	terá concluído	teria concluído
tínhamos concluído	teremos concluído	teríamos concluído
tinham concluído	terão concluído	teriam concluído
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
conclua	concluísse	concluir
conclua	concluísse	concluir
concluamos	concluíssemos	concluirmos
concluam	concluíssem	concluírem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja concluindo	estivesse concluindo	estiver concluindo
esteja concluindo	estivesse concluindo	estiver concluindo
estejamos concluindo	estivéssemos concluindo	estivermos concluindo
estejam concluindo	estivessem concluindo	estiverem concluindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha concluído	tivesse concluído	tiver concluído
tenha concluído	tivesse concluído	tiver concluído
tenhamos concluído	tivéssemos concluído	tivermos concluído
tenham concluído	tivessem concluído	tiverem concluído
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	concluir	ter concluído
(você) *conclui*/conclua	concluir	ter concluído
	concluirmos	termos concluído
(vocês) concluam	concluírem	terem concluído

Remark: Irregular verb *concluir* can be replaced with the regular verb *terminar* (to finish).

Portuguese	English
Quando você **concluiu/terminou** o curso?	When **did** you **finish** the course?
Nós **concluímos** que não vale a pena.	We **concluded** that it is not worthwhile.

2.3.2. Construir (to build)

infinitive: construir	pres.participle: construindo	past participle: construído
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu construo	estou construindo	estava construindo
você/ele/ela *constrói*	está construindo	estava construindo
nós construímos	estamos construindo	estávamos construindo
vocês/eles/elas *constroem*	estão construindo	estavam construindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou construir	construí	construía
vai construir	construiu	construía
vamos construir	construímos	construíamos
vão construir	construíram	construíam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho construído	construirei	construiria
tem construído	construirá	construiria
temos construído	construiremos	construiríamos
têm construído	construirão	construiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha construído	terei construído	teria construído
tinha construído	terá construído	teria construído
tínhamos construído	teremos construído	teríamos construído
tinham construído	terão construído	teriam construído
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
construa	construísse	construir
construa	construísse	construir
construamos	construíssemos	construirmos
construam	construíssem	construírem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja construindo	estivesse construindo	estiver construindo
esteja construindo	estivesse construindo	estiver construindo
estejamos construindo	estivéssemos construindo	estivermos construindo
estejam construindo	estivessem construindo	estiverem construindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha construído	tivesse construído	tiver construído
tenha construído	tivesse construído	tiver construído
tenhamos construído	tivéssemos construído	tivermos construído
tenham construído	tivessem construído	tiverem construído
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	construir	ter construído
(você) *constrói*/construa	construir	ter construído
	construirmos	termos construído
(vocês) construam	construírem	terem construído

Remark: Verbs *destruir* (destroy) and *reconstruir* (to rebuild) follow the model of *construir*.

Portuguese	English
Eles **estão construindo** uma casa.	They **are building** a house.
Eles **construíram** um apartamento.	They **built** an apartment.

2.3.3. Ir (to go)

infinitive: ir	pres.participle: indo	past participle: ido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *vou*	estou indo	estava indo
você/ele/ela *vai*	está indo	estava indo
nós *vamos*	estamos indo	estávamos indo
vocês/eles/elas *vão*	estão indo	estavam indo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou	*fui*	ia
vai	*foi*	ia
vamos	*fomos*	íamos
vão	*foram*	iam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho ido	irei	iria
tem ido	irá	iria
temos ido	iremos	iríamos
têm ido	irão	iriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha ido	terei ido	teria ido
tinha ido	terá ido	teria ido
tínhamos ido	teremos ido	teríamos ido
tinham ido	terão ido	teriam ido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
vá	*fosse*	*for*
vá	*fosse*	*for*
vamos	*fôssemos*	*formos*
vão	*fossem*	*forem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja indo	estivesse indo	estiver indo
esteja indo	estivesse indo	estiver indo
estejamos indo	estivéssemos indo	estivermos indo
estejam indo	estivessem indo	estiverem indo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha ido	tivesse ido	tiver ido
tenha ido	tivesse ido	tiver ido
tenhamos ido	tivéssemos ido	tivermos ido
tenham ido	tivessem ido	tiverem ido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ir	ter ido
(você) *vai/vá*	ir	ter ido
(nós) *vamos*	irmos	termos ido
(vocês) *vão*	irem	terem ido

Remark: *Ir* + *lá* (to go + there) indicates a movement away from the speaker. The opposite *vir* + *aqui* (to come + here) indicates a movement towards the speaker.

Portuguese	English
Você **vai** ao cinema com a gente?	**Are you going** to the movies with us?
Vamos embora.	**Let's go**.
Aonde você **foi**?	Where **did** you **go**?
Antigamente eu **ia** lá todos os dias.	In the past I **used to go** there every day.

169

2.3.4. Ouvir (to hear, to listen)

infinitive: ouvir	pres.participle: ouvindo	past participle: ouvido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *ouço*	estou ouvindo	estava ouvindo
você/ele/ela ouve	está ouvindo	estava ouvindo
nós ouvimos	estamos ouvindo	estávamos ouvindo
vocês/eles/elas ouvem	estão ouvindo	estavam ouvindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ouvir	ouvi	ouvia
vai ouvir	ouviu	ouvia
vamos ouvir	ouvimos	ouvíamos
vão ouvir	ouviram	ouviam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho ouvido	ouvirei	ouviria
tem ouvido	ouvirá	ouviria
temos ouvido	ouviremos	ouviríamos
têm ouvido	ouvirão	ouviriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha ouvido	terei ouvido	teria ouvido
tinha ouvido	terá ouvido	teria ouvido
tínhamos ouvido	teremos ouvido	teríamos ouvido
tinham ouvido	terão ouvido	teriam ouvido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
ouça	ouvisse	ouvir
ouça	ouvisse	ouvir
ouçamos	ouvíssemos	ouvirmos
ouçam	ouvissem	ouvirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja ouvindo	estivesse ouvindo	estiver ouvindo
esteja ouvindo	estivesse ouvindo	estiver ouvindo
estejamos ouvindo	estivéssemos ouvindo	estivermos ouvindo
estejam ouvindo	estivessem ouvindo	estiverem ouvindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha ouvido	tivesse ouvido	tiver ouvido
tenha ouvido	tivesse ouvido	tiver ouvido
tenhamos ouvido	tivéssemos ouvido	tivermos ouvido
tenham ouvido	tivessem ouvido	tiverem ouvido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ouvir	ter ouvido
(você) ouve/*ouça*	ouvir	ter ouvido
	ouvirmos	termos ouvido
(vocês) *ouçam*	ouvirem	terem ouvido

Portuguese	English
Ouvi falar que ele está no Brasil	I **have heard** that he is in Brazil.
Você **ouviu** o barulho?	**Have** you **heard** the noise?
Eu gosto de **ouvir** música brasileira.	I like to **listen to** Brazilian music.
Fale mais alto. **Não estou ouvindo** direito.	Speak louder. **I cannot hear** well/clearly.

2.3.5. Pedir (to ask, to order)

infinitive: pedir	pres.participle: pedindo	past participle: pedido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *peço*	estou pedindo	estava pedindo
você/ele/ela pede	está pedindo	estava pedindo
nós pedimos	estamos pedindo	estávamos pedindo
vocês/eles/elas pedem	estão pedindo	estavam pedindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou pedir	pedi	pedia
vai pedir	pediu	pedia
vamos pedir	pedimos	pedíamos
vão pedir	pediram	pediam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho pedido	pedirei	pediria
tem pedido	pedirá	pediria
temos pedido	pediremos	pediríamos
têm pedido	pedirão	pediriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha pedido	terei pedido	teria pedido
tinha pedido	terá pedido	teria pedido
tínhamos pedido	teremos pedido	teríamos pedido
tinham pedido	terão pedido	teriam pedido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
peça	pedisse	pedir
peça	pedisse	pedir
peçamos	pedíssemos	pedirmos
peçam	pedissem	pedirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja pedindo	estivesse pedindo	estiver pedindo
esteja pedindo	estivesse pedindo	estiver pedindo
estejamos pedindo	estivéssemos pedindo	estivermos pedindo
estejam pedindo	estivessem pedindo	estiverem pedindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha pedido	tivesse pedido	tiver pedido
tenha pedido	tivesse pedido	tiver pedido
tenhamos pedido	tivéssemos pedido	tivermos pedido
tenham pedido	tivessem pedido	tiverem pedido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	pedir	ter pedido
(você) pede/*peça*	pedir	ter pedido
	pedirmos	termos pedido
(vocês) *peçam*	pedirem	terem pedido

Remark: There are only a few verbs like *despedir-se* (to say good-bye), *impedir* (to prevent*)* and *medir* (to measure) which follow the model of *pedir*.

Portuguese	English
O que você **vai pedir**?	What are you going **to order**?
Eu **pedi** a ele pra me ligar de volta.	I **asked** him to call me back.
Peça mais um suco de laranja.	**Order** another orange juice.

2.3.6. Rir (to laugh)

infinitive: rir	pres.participle: rindo	past participle: rido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *rio*	estou rindo	estava rindo
você/ele/ela *ri*	está rindo	estava rindo
nós rimos	estamos rindo	estávamos rindo
vocês/eles/elas *riem*	estão rindo	estavam rindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou rir	ri	ria
vai rir	riu	ria
vamos rir	rimos	ríamos
vão rir	riram	riam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho rido	rirei	riria
tem rido	rirá	riria
temos rido	riremos	riríamos
têm rido	rirão	ririam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha rido	terei rido	teria rido
tinha rido	terá rido	teria rido
tínhamos rido	teremos rido	teríamos rido
tinham rido	terão rido	teriam rido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
ria	risse	rir
ria	risse	rir
ríamos	ríssemos	rirmos
riam	rissem	rirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja rindo	estivesse rindo	estiver rindo
esteja rindo	estivesse rindo	estiver rindo
estejamos rindo	estivéssemos rindo	estivermos rindo
estejam rindo	estivessem rindo	estiverem rindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha rido	tivesse rido	tiver rido
tenha rido	tivesse rido	tiver rido
tenhamos rido	tivéssemos rido	tivermos rido
tenham rido	tivessem rido	tiverem rido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	rir	ter rido
(você) *ri/ria*	rir	ter rido
	rirmos	termos rido
(vocês) *riam*	rirem	terem rido

Remark: Verb *sorrir* (to smile) follows the model of *rir*.

Portuguese	English
De que você **está rindo**?	What **are** you **laughing** at?
Nós **rimos** tanto.	We **laughed** so much.
Ele **está** sempre **rindo**.	He **is** always **laughing**.
Eles **estavam rindo** quando saí da sala.	They **were laughing** when I left the room.

2.3.7. Sair (to leave, to go out)

infinitive: sair	pres.participle: saindo	past participle: saído
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu saio	estou saindo	estava saindo
você/ele/ela sai	está saindo	estava saindo
nós saímos	estamos saindo	estávamos saindo
vocês/eles/elas saem	estão saindo	estavam saindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou sair	saí	saía
vai sair	saiu	saía
vamos sair	saímos	saíamos
vão sair	saíram	saíam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho saído	sairei	sairia
tem saído	sairá	sairia
temos saído	sairemos	sairíamos
têm saído	sairão	sairiam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha saído	terei saído	teria saído
tinha saído	terá saído	teria saído
tínhamos saído	teremos saído	teríamos saído
tinham saído	terão saído	teriam saído
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
saia	saísse	sair
saia	saísse	sair
saiamos	saíssemos	sairmos
saiam	saíssem	saírem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja saindo	estivesse saindo	estiver saindo
esteja saindo	estivesse saindo	estiver saindo
estejamos saindo	estivéssemos saindo	estivermos saindo
estejam saindo	estivessem saindo	estiverem saindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha saído	tivesse saído	tiver saído
tenha saído	tivesse saído	tiver saído
tenhamos saído	tivéssemos saído	tivermos saído
tenham saído	tivessem saído	tiverem saído
Imperativo/Imperative	Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)	
	sair	ter saído
(você) sai/saia	sair	ter saído
	sairmos	termos saído
(vocês) saiam	saírem	terem saído

Remark: All verbs ending in **air** like *cair* (to fall) follow the model of *sair*.

Portuguese	English
Estou com vontade de **sair** hoje à noite.	I would like to **go out** tonight.
Você **saiu** ontem à noite?	**Did** you **go out** last night?
Saí do escritório às 9 horas.	I **left** the office at 9 o'clock.
A que horas **sai** o avião?	What time **does** the plane **leave/take off**?

2.3.8. Traduzir (to translate)

infinitive: traduzir	pres.participle: traduzindo	past participle: traduzido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu traduzo	estou traduzindo	estava traduzindo
você/ele/ela *traduz*	está traduzindo	estava traduzindo
nós traduzimos	estamos traduzindo	estávamos traduzindo
vocês/eles/elas traduzem	estão traduzindo	estavam traduzindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou traduzir	traduzi	traduzia
vai traduzir	traduziu	traduzia
vamos traduzir	traduzimos	traduzíamos
vão traduzir	traduziram	traduziam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho traduzido	traduzirei	traduziria
tem traduzido	traduzirá	traduziria
temos traduzido	traduziremos	traduziríamos
têm traduzido	traduzirão	traduziriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha traduzido	terei traduzido	teria traduzido
tinha traduzido	terá traduzido	teria traduzido
tínhamos traduzido	teremos traduzido	teríamos traduzido
tinham traduzido	terão traduzido	teriam traduzido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
traduza	traduzisse	traduzir
traduza	traduzisse	traduzir
traduzamos	traduzíssemos	traduzirmos
traduzam	traduzissem	traduzirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja traduzindo	estivesse traduzindo	estiver traduzindo
esteja traduzindo	estivesse traduzindo	estiver traduzindo
estejamos traduzindo	estivéssemos traduzindo	estivermos traduzindo
estejam traduzindo	estivessem traduzindo	estiverem traduzindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha traduzido	tivesse traduzido	tiver traduzido
tenha traduzido	tivesse traduzido	tiver traduzido
tenhamos traduzido	tivéssemos traduzido	tivermos traduzido
tenham traduzido	tivessem traduzido	tiverem traduzido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	traduzir	ter traduzido
(você) *traduz*/traduza	traduzir	ter traduzido
	traduzirmos	termos traduzido
(vocês) traduzam	traduzirem	terem traduzido

Remark: Verbs ending in **zir** are completely regular except for the 2nd and 3rd person singular in the simple present and imperative (colloquial form).

Portuguese	English
Quem **traduziu** esta carta?	**Who** translated **this letter?**
Você pode **traduzir** este artigo pra mim?	Can you **translate** this article for me?
Traduzi do inglês para o português.	I **translated** it from English into Portuguese.

2.3.9. Vir (to come)

infinitive: vir	pres.participle: vindo	past participle: vindo
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *venho*	estou vindo	estava vindo
você/ele/ela *vem*	está vindo	estava vindo
nós vimos	estamos vindo	estávamos vindo
vocês/eles/elas *vêm*	estão vindo	estavam vindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou vir	*vim*	*vinha*
vai vir	*veio*	*vinha*
vamos vir	*viemos*	*vínhamos*
vão vir	*vieram*	*vinham*
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho *vindo*	virei	viria
tem *vindo*	virá	viria
temos *vindo*	viremos	viríamos
têm *vindo*	virão	viriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha *vindo*	terei *vindo*	teria *vindo*
tinha *vindo*	terá *vindo*	teria *vindo*
tínhamos *vindo*	teremos *vindo*	teríamos *vindo*
tinham *vindo*	terão *vindo*	teriam *vindo*
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
venha	*viesse*	*vier*
venha	*viesse*	*vier*
venhamos	*viéssemos*	*viermos*
venham	*viessem*	*vierem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja vindo	estivesse vindo	estiver vindo
esteja vindo	estivesse vindo	estiver vindo
estejamos vindo	estivéssemos vindo	estivermos vindo
estejam vindo	estivessem vindo	estiverem vindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha *vindo*	tivesse *vindo*	tiver *vindo*
tenha *vindo*	tivesse *vindo*	tiver *vindo*
tenhamos *vindo*	tivéssemos *vindo*	tivermos *vindo*
tenham *vindo*	tivessem *vindo*	tiverem *vindo*
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	vir	ter *vindo*
(você) *vem/venha*	vir	ter *vindo*
	virmos	termos *vindo*
(vocês) *venham*	virem	terem *vindo*

Remark: *Vir* + *aqui* (to come + here) indicates a movement towards the speaker. The opposite *ir* + *lá* (to go + there) indicates a movement away from the speaker.

Portuguese	English
Venha aqui/cá.	**Come** here.
Por que você **não veio** à aula ontem?	Why **did** you **not come** to class yesterday?
Vocês **vieram** de carro?	**Did** you **come** by car?

175

2.4. Verbs ending in por

infinitive: pôr (to put)	pres.participle: pondo	past participle: *posto*
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *ponho*	estou pondo	estava pondo
você/ele/ela *põe*	está pondo	estava pondo
nós *pomos*	estamos pondo	estávamos pondo
vocês/eles/elas *põem*	estão pondo	estavam pondo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou pôr	*pus*	*punha*
vai pôr	*pôs*	*punha*
vamos pôr	*pusemos*	*púnhamos*
vão pôr	*puseram*	*punham*
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont..	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho *posto*	porei	poria
tem *posto*	porá	poria
temos *posto*	poremos	poríamos
têm *posto*	porão	poriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha *posto*	terei *posto*	teria *posto*
tinha *posto*	terá *posto*	teria *posto*
tínhamos *posto*	teremos *posto*	teríamos *posto*
tinham *posto*	terão *posto*	teriam *posto*
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
ponha	*pusesse*	*puser*
ponha	*pusesse*	*puser*
ponhamos	*puséssemos*	*pusermos*
ponham	*pusessem*	*puserem*
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja pondo	estivesse pondo	estiver pondo
esteja pondo	estivesse pondo	estiver pondo
estejamos pondo	estivéssemos pondo	estivermos pondo
estejam pondo	estivessem pondo	estiverem pondo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha *posto*	tivesse *posto*	tiver *posto*
tenha *posto*	tivesse *posto*	tiver *posto*
tenhamos *posto*	tivéssemos *posto*	tivermos *posto*
tenham *posto*	tivessem *posto*	tiverem *posto*
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	pôr	ter *posto*
(você) *põe/ponha*	pôr	ter *posto*
	pormos	termos *posto*
(vocês) *ponham*	porem	terem *posto*

Remark: There are only a few verbs ending in **por**. Irregular verb *pôr* can be replaced with regular verb *colocar* (to put), except for the verbal idiom *pôr a mesa* (to lay the table).

Portuguese	English
Onde você **pôs** o jornal de hoje?	Where **did** you **put** today's paper?
Ele **está pondo** a roupa.	He **is putting on** his clothes.
Por que você **não põe** a mesa ali?	Why **don't** you **put** the table there?

3. IRREGULAR VERBS WITH MINOR SPELLING CHANGES

3.1. Verbs ending in car - spelling change from c to qu

infinitive: ficar (to stay)	pres.participle: ficando	past participle: ficado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu fico	estou ficando	estava ficando
você/ele/ela fica	está ficando	estava ficando
nós ficamos	estamos ficando	estávamos ficando
vocês/eles/elas ficam	estão ficando	estavam ficando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ficar	*fiquei*	ficava
vai ficar	ficou	ficava
vamos ficar	ficamos	ficávamos
vão ficar	ficaram	ficavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho ficado	ficarei	ficaria
tem ficado	ficará	ficaria
temos ficado	ficaremos	ficaríamos
têm ficado	ficarão	ficariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha ficado	terei ficado	teria ficado
tinha ficado	terá ficado	teria ficado
tínhamos ficado	teremos ficado	teríamos ficado
tinham ficado	terão ficado	teriam ficado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
fique	ficasse	ficar
fique	ficasse	ficar
fiquemos	ficássemos	ficarmos
fiquem	ficassem	ficarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja ficando	estivesse ficando	estiver ficando
esteja ficando	estivesse ficando	estiver ficando
estejamos ficando	estivéssemos ficando	estivermos ficando
estejam ficando	estivessem ficando	estiverem ficando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha ficado	tivesse ficado	tiver ficado
tenha ficado	tivesse ficado	tiver ficado
tenhamos ficado	tivéssemos ficado	tivermos ficado
tenham ficado	tivessem ficado	tiverem ficado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	ficar	ter ficado
(você) fica/*fique*	ficar	ter ficado
	ficarmos	termos ficado
(vocês) *fiquem*	ficarem	terem ficado

Remark: All verbs ending in **car** follow the model of *ficar* (to stay).

Portuguese	English
Onde **fica** seu escritório?	Where **is** your office?
Fique aqui. Eu volto já.	**Stay** here. I will be right back.

3.2. Verbs ending in gar - spelling change from g to gu

infinitive: chegar (to arrive)	pres.participle: chegando	past participle: chegado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu chego	estou chegando	estava chegando
você/ele/ela chega	está chegando	estava chegando
nós chegamos	estamos chegando	estávamos chegando
vocês/eles/elas chegam	estão chegando	estavam chegando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou chegar	*cheguei*	chegava
vai chegar	chegou	chegava
vamos chegar	chegamos	chegávamos
vão chegar	chegaram	chegavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho chegado	chegarei	chegaria
tem chegado	chegará	chegaria
temos chegado	chegaremos	chegaríamos
têm chegado	chegarão	chegariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha chegado	terei chegado	teria chegado
tinha chegado	terá chegado	teria chegado
tínhamos chegado	teremos chegado	teríamos chegado
tinham chegado	terão chegado	teriam chegado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
chegue	chegasse	chegar
chegue	chegasse	chegar
cheguemos	chegássemos	chegarmos
cheguem	chegassem	chegarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja chegando	estivesse chegando	estiver chegando
esteja chegando	estivesse chegando	estiver chegando
estejamos chegando	estivéssemos chegando	estivermos chegando
estejam chegando	estivessem chegando	estiverem chegando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha chegado	tivesse chegado	tiver chegado
tenha chegado	tivesse chegado	tiver chegado
tenhamos chegado	tivéssemos chegado	tivermos chegado
tenham chegado	tivessem chegado	tiverem chegado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	chegar	ter chegado
(você) chega/*chegue*	chegar	ter chegado
	chegarmos	termos chegado
(vocês) *cheguem*	chegarem	terem chegado

Remark: All verbs ending in **gar** follow the model of *chegar* (to arrive).

Portuguese	English
A que horas vocês **chegaram** lá?	What time **did** you **get** there?
Cheguei 10 minutos atrasado hoje.	I **arrived** 10 minutes late today.
Nós **vamos chegar** lá pelas 7 horas.	We **are going to arrive** around 7 o'clock.
Acabei de chegar em casa.	I **have just arrived** at home.

3.3. Verbs ending in çar - spelling change from ç to c

infinitive: começar (to begin)	pres.participle: começando	past participle: começado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu começo	estou começando	estava começando
você/ele/ela começa	está começando	estava começando
nós começamos	estamos começando	estávamos começando
vocês/eles/elas começam	estão começando	estavam começando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou começar	*comecei*	começava
vai começar	começou	começava
vamos começar	começamos	começávamos
vão começar	começaram	começavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho começado	começarei	começaria
tem começado	começará	começaria
temos começado	começaremos	começaríamos
têm começado	começarão	começariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha começado	terei começado	teria começado
tinha começado	terá começado	teria começado
tínhamos começado	teremos começado	teríamos começado
tinham começado	terão começado	teriam começado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
comece	começasse	começar
comece	começasse	começar
comecemos	começássemos	começarmos
comecem	começassem	começarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja começando	estivesse começando	estiver começando
esteja começando	estivesse começando	estiver começando
estejamos começando	estivéssemos começando	estivermos começando
estejam começando	estivessem começando	estiverem começando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha começado	tivesse começado	tiver começado
tenha começado	tivesse começado	tiver começado
tenhamos começado	tivéssemos começado	tivermos começado
tenham começado	tivessem começado	tiverem começado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	começar	ter começado
(você) começa/*comece*	começar	ter começado
	começarmos	termos começado
(vocês) *comecem*	começarem	terem começado

Remark: All verbs ending in çar follow the model of *começar* (to begin).

Portuguese	English
A que horas **começa** o filme?	What time **does** the film **begin**?
Comecei a aprender Português.	I **started** to learn Portuguese.
Começa/Comece de novo.	**Start** again.
A aula **vai começar** mais cedo hoje.	The class **will begin** earlier today.

3.4. Verbs ending in cer - spelling change from c to ç

infinitive: esquecer (to forget)	pres.participle: esquecendo	past participle: esquecido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *esqueço*	estou esquecendo	estava esquecendo
você/ele/ela esquece	está esquecendo	estava esquecendo
nós esquecemos	estamos esquecendo	estávamos esquecendo
vocês/eles/elas esquecem	estão esquecendo	estavam esquecendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou esquecer	esqueci	esquecia
vai esquecer	esqueceu	esquecia
vamos esquecer	esquecemos	esquecíamos
vão esquecer	esqueceram	esqueciam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho esquecido	esquecerei	esqueceria
tem esquecido	esquecerá	esqueceria
temos esquecido	esqueceremos	esqueceríamos
têm esquecido	esquecerão	esqueceriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha esquecido	terei esquecido	teria esquecido
tinha esquecido	terá esquecido	teria esquecido
tínhamos esquecido	teremos esquecido	teríamos esquecido
tinham esquecido	terão esquecido	teriam esquecido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
esqueça	esquecesse	esquecer
esqueça	esquecesse	esquecer
esqueçamos	esquecêssemos	esquecermos
esqueçam	esquecessem	esquecerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja esquecendo	estivesse esquecendo	estiver esquecendo
esteja esquecendo	estivesse esquecendo	estiver esquecendo
estejamos esquecendo	estivéssemos esquecendo	estivermos esquecendo
estejam esquecendo	estivessem esquecendo	estiverem esquecendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha esquecido	tivesse esquecido	tiver esquecido
tenha esquecido	tivesse esquecido	tiver esquecido
tenhamos esquecido	tivéssemos esquecido	tivermos esquecido
tenham esquecido	tivessem esquecido	tiverem esquecido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	esquecer	ter esquecido
(você) esquece/*esqueça*	esquecer	ter esquecido
	esquecermos	termos esquecido
(vocês) *esqueçam*	esquecerem	terem esquecido

Remark: All verbs ending in **cer** follow the model of *esquecer* (to forget).

Portuguese	English
Esqueci de comprar leite.	I **forgot** to buy milk.
Não (se) esqueça de passar no banco.	**Do not forget** to drop by at the bank.
Ele **esqueceu** o celular no escritório.	He **forgot** his cellular phone in the office.
Eles **(se) esqueceram** de me informar.	They **forgot** to inform me.

3.5. Verbs ending in ger - spelling change from g to j

infinitive: proteger (to protect)	pres.participle: protegendo	past participle: protegido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *protejo*	estou protegendo	estava protegendo
você/ele/ela protege	está protegendo	estava protegendo
nós protegemos	estamos protegendo	estávamos protegendo
vocês/eles/elas protegem	estão protegendo	estavam protegendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou proteger	protegi	protegia
vai proteger	protegeu	protegia
vamos proteger	protegemos	protegíamos
vão proteger	protegeram	protegiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho protegido	protegerei	protegeria
tem protegido	protegerá	protegeria
temos protegido	protegeremos	protegeríamos
têm protegido	protegerão	protegeriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha protegido	terei protegido	teria protegido
tinha protegido	terá protegido	teria protegido
tínhamos protegido	teremos protegido	teríamos protegido
tinham protegido	terão protegido	teriam protegido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
proteja	protegesse	proteger
proteja	protegesse	proteger
protejamos	protegêssemos	protegermos
protejam	protegessem	protegerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja protegendo	estivesse protegendo	estiver protegendo
esteja protegendo	estivesse protegendo	estiver protegendo
estejamos protegendo	estivéssemos protegendo	estivermos protegendo
estejam protegendo	estivessem protegendo	estiverem protegendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha protegido	tivesse protegido	tiver protegido
tenha protegido	tivesse protegido	tiver protegido
tenhamos protegido	tivéssemos protegido	tivermos protegido
tenham protegido	tivessem protegido	tiverem protegido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	proteger	ter protegido
(você) protege/*proteja*	proteger	ter protegido
	protegermos	termos protegido
(vocês) *protejam*	protegerem	terem protegido

Remark: There are only a few verbs ending in **ger**.

Portuguese	English
Proteja o meio ambiente!	Protect **the environment!**
Ela **protege** as crianças demais.	She **protects** her children too much.
Que Deus te **proteja**!	May God **protect** you!

3.6. Verbs ending in gir - spelling change from g to j

infinitive: dirigir (to drive)	pres.participle: dirigindo	past participle: dirigido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *dirijo*	estou dirigindo	estava dirigindo
você/ele/ela dirige	está dirigindo	estava dirigindo
nós dirigimos	estamos dirigindo	estávamos dirigindo
vocês/eles/elas dirigem	estão dirigindo	estavam dirigindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou dirigir	dirigi	dirigia
vai dirigir	dirigiu	dirigia
vamos dirigir	dirigimos	dirigíamos
vão dirigir	dirigiram	dirigiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho dirigido	dirigirei	dirigiria
tem dirigido	dirigirá	dirigiria
temos dirigido	dirigiremos	dirigiríamos
têm dirigido	dirigirão	dirigiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha dirigido	terei dirigido	teria dirigido
tinha dirigido	terá dirigido	teria dirigido
tínhamos dirigido	teremos dirigido	teríamos dirigido
tinham dirigido	terão dirigido	teriam dirigido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
dirija	dirigisse	dirigir
dirija	dirigisse	dirigir
dirijamos	dirigíssemos	dirigirmos
dirijam	dirigissem	dirigirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja dirigindo	estivesse dirigindo	estiver dirigindo
esteja dirigindo	estivesse dirigindo	estiver dirigindo
estejamos dirigindo	estivéssemos dirigindo	estivermos dirigindo
estejam dirigindo	estivessem dirigindo	estiverem dirigindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha dirigido	tivesse dirigido	tiver dirigido
tenha dirigido	tivesse dirigido	tiver dirigido
tenhamos dirigido	tivéssemos dirigido	tivermos dirigido
tenham dirigido	tivessem dirigido	tiverem dirigido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	dirigir	ter dirigido
(você) dirige/*dirija*	dirigir	ter dirigido
	dirigirmos	termos dirigido
(vocês) *dirijam*	dirigirem	terem dirigido

Remark: Verbs ending in **gir**, except for *fugir* (to flee), follow the model of *dirigir* (to drive).

Portuguese	English
Eu não gosto muito de **dirigir**.	I do not like **to drive** very much.
Ele **dirige** muito bem.	He **drives** very well.
Você já **dirigiu** um caminhão?	**Have** you ever/already **driven** a truck?
Dirija mais devagar.	**Drive** more slowly/**Slow down** a bit.

3.7. Verbs ending in guar - spelling change from gu to gü

infinitive: aguar (to water)	pres.participle: aguando	past participle: aguado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *águo*	estou aguando	estava aguando
você/ele/ela *água*	está aguando	estava aguando
nós aguamos	estamos aguando	estávamos aguando
vocês/eles/elas *águam*	estão aguando	estavam aguando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou aguar	*agüei*	aguava
vai aguar	aguou	aguava
vamos aguar	aguamos	aguávamos
vão aguar	aguaram	aguavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho aguado	aguarei	aguaria
tem aguado	aguará	aguaria
temos aguado	aguaremos	aguaríamos
têm aguado	aguarão	aguariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha aguado	terei aguado	teria aguado
tinha aguado	terá aguado	teria aguado
tínhamos aguado	teremos aguado	teríamos aguado
tinham aguado	terão aguado	teriam aguado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
agüe	aguasse	aguar
agüe	aguasse	aguar
agüemos	aguássemos	aguarmos
agüem	aguassem	aguarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja aguando	estivesse aguando	estiver aguando
esteja aguando	estivesse aguando	estiver aguando
estejamos aguando	estivéssemos aguando	estivermos aguando
estejam aguando	estivessem aguando	estiverem aguando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha aguado	tivesse aguado	tiver aguado
tenha aguado	tivesse aguado	tiver aguado
tenhamos aguado	tivéssemos aguado	tivermos aguado
tenham aguado	tivessem aguado	tiverem aguado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	aguar	ter aguado
(você) água/*águe*	aguar	ter aguado
	aguarmos	termos aguado
(vocês) *águem*	aguarem	terem aguado

Remark: There are only a few verbs ending in guar. *Aguar* is marked with an accent (á) in some forms and it can be replaced with regular verbs *molhar* or *regar* (to water).

Portuguese	English
Você já **aguou** as plantas?	**Have** you already **watered** the plants?
Águe as plantas a cada dois dias.	**Water** the plants every two days.
Ela quer que eu **águe** as plantas pra ela.	She wants me **to water** the plants for her.

3.8. Verbs ending in guer - spelling change from gu to g

infinitive: erguer (to raise)	pres.participle: erguendo	past participle: erguido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *ergo*	estou erguendo	estava erguendo
você/ele/ela ergue	está erguendo	estava erguendo
nós erguemos	estamos erguendo	estávamos erguendo
vocês/eles/elas erguem	estão erguendo	estavam erguendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou erguer	ergui	erguia
vai erguer	ergueu	erguia
vamos erguer	erguemos	erguíamos
vão erguer	ergueram	erguiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho erguido	erguerei	ergueria
tem erguido	erguerá	ergueria
temos erguido	ergueremos	ergueríamos
têm erguido	erguerão	ergueriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha erguido	terei erguido	teria erguido
tinha erguido	terá erguido	teria erguido
tínhamos erguido	teremos erguido	teríamos erguido
tinham erguido	terão erguido	teriam erguido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
erga	erguesse	erguer
erga	erguesse	erguer
ergamos	erguêssemos	erguermos
ergam	erguessem	erguerem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja erguendo	estivesse erguendo	estiver erguendo
esteja erguendo	estivesse erguendo	estiver erguendo
estejamos erguendo	estivéssemos erguendo	estivermos erguendo
estejam erguendo	estivessem erguendo	estiverem erguendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha erguido	tivesse erguido	tiver erguido
tenha erguido	tivesse erguido	tiver erguido
tenhamos erguido	tivéssemos erguido	tivermos erguido
tenham erguido	tivessem erguido	tiverem erguido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	erguer	ter erguido
(você) ergue/*erga*	erguer	ter erguido
	erguermos	termos erguido
(vocês) *ergam*	erguerem	terem erguido

Remark: *Erguer* is the only frequently used verb ending in **guer** and it can be replaced with regular verb *levantar* (to lift/raise) or *aumentar* (to turn up) depending on the context.

Portuguese	English
Não consigo **erguer** minha perna direita.	I cannot **raise** my right leg.
Ergue/Erga um pouco o som.	**Turn up** the volume a bit.
Você já **ergueu a barra** da calça?	**Have** you already **shortened** the trousers?

3.9. Verbs ending in guir - spelling change from gu to g

infinitive: conseguir (to get)	pres.participle: conseguindo	past participle: conseguido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *consigo*	estou conseguindo	estava conseguindo
você/ele/ela consegue	está conseguindo	estava conseguindo
nós conseguimos	estamos conseguindo	estávamos conseguindo
vocês/eles/elas conseguem	estão conseguindo	estavam conseguindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou conseguir	consegui	conseguia
vai conseguir	conseguiu	conseguia
vamos conseguir	conseguimos	conseguíamos
vão conseguir	conseguiram	conseguiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres. cond.**
tenho conseguido	conseguirei	conseguiria
tem conseguido	conseguirá	conseguiria
temos conseguido	conseguiremos	conseguiríamos
têm conseguido	conseguirão	conseguiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha conseguido	terei conseguido	teria conseguido
tinha conseguido	terá conseguido	teria conseguido
tínhamos conseguido	teremos conseguido	teríamos conseguido
tinham conseguido	terão conseguido	teriam conseguido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
consiga	conseguisse	conseguir
consiga	conseguisse	conseguir
consigamos	conseguíssemos	conseguirmos
consigam	conseguissem	conseguirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja conseguindo	estivesse conseguindo	estiver conseguindo
esteja conseguindo	estivesse conseguindo	estiver conseguindo
estejamos conseguindo	estivéssemos conseguindo	estivermos conseguindo
estejam conseguindo	estivessem conseguindo	estiverem conseguindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha conseguido	tivesse conseguido	tiver conseguido
tenha conseguido	tivesse conseguido	tiver conseguido
tenhamos conseguido	tivéssemos conseguido	tivermos conseguido
tenham conseguido	tivessem conseguido	tiverem conseguido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	conseguir	ter conseguido
(você) consegue/*consiga*	conseguir	ter conseguido
	conseguirmos	termos conseguido
(vocês) *consigam*	conseguirem	terem conseguido

Remark: Verbs ending in **eguir** have also a spelling change from **e** to **i**.

Portuguese	English
Não consigo fazer este exercício.	I **cannot** do this exercise.
Você **conseguiu** falar com o Pedro?	**Have** you **managed** to talk to Peter?
Ele **não conseguiu** encontrar o livro.	He **could not** find the book.
Consegui o trabalho através de um amigo meu.	I **got** the job through a friend of mine.

3.10. Verbs ending in gredir - spelling change from e to i

infinitive: progredir (to progress)	pres.participle: progredindo	past participle: progredido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**presente cont./pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *progrido*	estou progredindo	estava progredindo
você/ele/ela *progride*	está progredindo	estava progredindo
nós progredimos	estamos progredindo	estávamos progredindo
vocês/eles/elas *progridem*	estão progredindo	estavam progredindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou progredir	progredi	progredia
vai progredir	progrediu	progredia
vamos progredir	progredimos	progredíamos
vão progredir	progrediram	progrediam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho progredido	progredirei	progrediria
tem progredido	progredirá	progrediria
temos progredido	progrediremos	progrediríamos
têm progredido	progredirão	progrediriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha progredido	terei progredido	teria progredido
tinha progredido	terá progredido	teria progredido
tínhamos progredido	teremos progredido	teríamos progredido
tinham progredido	terão progredido	teriam progredido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
progrida	progredisse	progredir
progrida	progredisse	progredir
progridamos	progredíssemos	progredirmos
progridam	progredissem	progredirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja progredindo	estivesse progredindo	estiver progredindo
esteja progredindo	estivesse progredindo	estiver progredindo
estejamos progredindo	estivéssemos progredindo	estivermos progredindo
estejam progredindo	estivessem progredindo	estiverem progredindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha progredido	tivesse progredido	tiver progredido
tenha progredido	tivesse progredido	tiver progredido
tenhamos progredido	tivéssemos progredido	tivermos progredido
tenham progredido	tivessem progredido	tiverem progredido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	progredir	ter progredido
(você) *progride/progrida*	progredir	ter progredido
	progredirmos	termos progredido
(vocês) *progridam*	progredirem	terem progredido

Remark: There are only two frequently used verbs ending in **edir**: *agredir* (to attack) and *regredir* (to regress). Verb *prevenir* (to prevent) also follows the model of *progredir*.

Portuguese	English
A firma dele **progrediu** muito.	His company **progressed** a lot.
Nós **estamos progredindo** cada vez mais.	We **are progressing** more and more.

186

3.11. Verbs ending in ear - spelling change from e to ei

infinitive: passear (to go out)	pres.participle: passeando	past participle: passeado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *passeio*	estou passeando	estava passeando
você/ele/ela *passeia*	está passeando	estava passeando
nós passeamos	estamos passeando	estávamos passeando
vocês/eles/elas *passeiam*	estão passeando	estavam passeando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou passear	passeei	passeava
vai passear	passeou	passeava
vamos passear	passeamos	passeávamos
vão passear	passearam	passeavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho passeado	passearei	passearia
tem passeado	passeará	passearia
temos passeado	passearemos	passearíamos
têm passeado	passearão	passeariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha passeado	terei passeado	teria passeado
tinha passeado	terá passeado	teria passeado
tínhamos passeado	teremos passeado	teríamos passeado
tinham passeado	terão passeado	teriam passeado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
passeie	passeasse	passear
passeie	passeasse	passear
passeemos	passeássemos	passearmos
passeiem	passeassem	passearem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja passeando	estivesse passeando	estiver passeando
esteja passeando	estivesse passeando	estiver passeando
estejamos passeando	estivéssemos passeando	estivermos passeando
estejam passeando	estivessem passeando	estiverem passeando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha passeado	tivesse passeado	tiver passeado
tenha passeado	tivesse passeado	tiver passeado
tenhamos passeado	tivéssemos passeado	tivermos passeado
tenham passeado	tivessem passeado	tiverem passeado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	passear	ter passeado
(você) *passeia/passeie*	passear	ter passeado
	passearmos	termos passeado
(vocês) *passeiem*	passearem	terem passeado

Remark: All verbs ending in **ear** follow the model of *passear* (to go for a walk).

Portuguese	English
Leva/Leve o cachorro **para passear**.	Take the dog **for a walk**.
Vamos passear um pouco.	**Let's go out** for a while.
Nós **passeamos** bastante.	We **have been** to a lot of places.
Adoro **passear** no parque perto de casa.	I love **walking** at the park near my home.

3.12. Verbs ending in iar - spelling change from i to ei

infinitive: odiar (to hate)	pres.participle: odiando	past participle: odiado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *odeio*	estou odiando	estava odiando
você/ele/ela *odeia*	está odiando	estava odiando
nós odiamos	estamos odiando	estávamos odiando
vocês/eles/elas *odeiam*	estão odiando	estavam odiando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou odiar	odiei	odiava
vai odiar	odiou	odiava
vamos odiar	odiamos	odiávamos
vão odiar	odiaram	odiavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho odiado	odiarei	odiaria
tem odiado	odiará	odiaria
temos odiado	odiaremos	odiaríamos
têm odiado	odiarão	odiariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha odiado	terei odiado	teria odiado
tinha odiado	terá odiado	teria odiado
tínhamos odiado	teremos odiado	teríamos odiado
tinham odiado	terão odiado	teriam odiado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
odeie	odiasse	odiar
odeie	odiasse	odiar
odiemos	odiássemos	odiarmos
odeiem	odiassem	odiarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja odiando	estivesse odiando	estiver odiando
esteja odiando	estivesse odiando	estiver odiando
estejamos odiando	estivéssemos odiando	estivermos odiando
estejam odiando	estivessem odiando	estiverem odiando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha odiado	tivesse odiado	tiver odiado
tenha odiado	tivesse odiado	tiver odiado
tenhamos odiado	tivéssemos odiado	tivermos odiado
tenham odiado	tivessem odiado	tiverem odiado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	odiar	ter odiado
(você) *odeia/odeie*	odiar	ter odiado
	odiarmos	termos odiado
(vocês) *odeiem*	odiarem	terem odiado

Remark: Most verbs ending in **iar** are **regular** (see page 147), except for *odiar* and a few rarely used irregular verbs, which follow the model of *odiar* (to hate). *Odiar* can be replaced with the regular verb *detestar* (to hate).

Portuguese	English
Eu **odeio/detesto** o inverno.	I **hate** the winter.
Ele **odeia/detesta** levantar cedo.	He **hates** to get up early.
Meus filhos **odeiam/detestam** espinafre.	My children **hate** spinach.

3.13. Verbs ending in ir (e preceding ending) - spelling change from e to i

infinitive: preferir (to prefer)	pres.participle: preferindo	past participle: preferido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *prefiro* você/ele/ela prefere nós preferimos vocês/eles/elas preferem	estou preferindo está preferindo estamos preferindo estão preferindo	estava preferindo estava preferindo estávamos preferindo estavam preferindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou preferir vai preferir vamos preferir vão preferir	preferi preferiu preferimos preferiram	preferia preferia preferíamos preferiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho preferido tem preferido temos preferido têm preferido	preferirei preferirá preferiremos preferirão	preferiria preferiria preferiríamos prefeririam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha preferido tinha preferido tínhamos preferido tinham preferido	terei preferido terá preferido teremos preferido terão preferido	teria preferido teria preferido teríamos preferido teriam preferido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
prefira *prefira* *prefiramos* *prefiram*	preferisse preferisse preferíssemos preferissem	preferir preferir preferirmos preferirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja preferindo esteja preferindo estejamos preferindo estejam preferindo	estivesse preferindo estivesse preferindo estivéssemos preferindo estivessem preferindo	estiver preferindo estiver preferindo estivermos preferindo estiverem preferindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha preferido tenha preferido tenhamos preferido tenham preferido	tivesse preferido tivesse preferido tivéssemos preferido tivessem preferido	tiver preferido tiver preferido tivermos preferido tiverem preferido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
 (você) prefere/*prefira* (vocês) *prefiram*	preferir preferir preferirmos preferirem	ter preferido ter preferido termos preferido terem preferido

Remark: All verbs ending in **entir, erir, ertir, ervir, estir** and **etir** follow the model of *preferir*. *Preferir* is not used in the imperative form, but other verbs can be used.

Portuguese	English
O que você **prefere**? Café ou chá?	What **do** you **prefer**? Coffee or tea?
Prefiro ficar em casa no feriado.	I **prefer** to stay at home on the public holiday.
Nós **preferimos** comprar uma casa.	We **prefer** to buy a house.

3.14. Verbs ending in ir (o preceding ending) - spelling change from o to u

infinitive: dormir (to sleep)	pres.participle: dormindo	past participle: dormido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu *durmo*	estou dormindo	estava dormindo
você/ele/ela dorme	está dormindo	estava dormindo
nós dormimos	estamos dormindo	estávamos dormindo
vocês/eles/elas dormem	estão dormindo	estavam dormindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou dormir	dormi	dormia
vai dormir	dormiu	dormia
vamos dormir	dormimos	dormíamos
vão dormir	dormiram	dormiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho dormido	dormirei	dormiria
tem dormido	dormirá	dormiria
temos dormido	dormiremos	dormiríamos
têm dormido	dormirão	dormiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha dormido	terei dormido	teria dormido
tinha dormido	terá dormido	teria dormido
tínhamos dormido	teremos dormido	teríamos dormido
tinham dormido	terão dormido	teriam dormido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
durma	dormisse	dormir
durma	dormisse	dormir
durmamos	dormíssemos	dormirmos
durmam	dormissem	dormirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja dormindo	estivesse dormindo	estiver dormindo
esteja dormindo	estivesse dormindo	estiver dormindo
estejamos dormindo	estivéssemos dormindo	estivermos dormindo
estejam dormindo	estivessem dormindo	estiverem dormindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha dormido	tivesse dormido	tiver dormido
tenha dormido	tivesse dormido	tiver dormido
tenhamos dormido	tivéssemos dormido	tivermos dormido
tenham dormido	tivessem dormido	tiverem dormido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	dormir	ter dormido
(você) dorme/*durma*	dormir	ter dormido
	dormirmos	termos dormido
(vocês) *durmam*	dormirem	terem dormido

Remark: Verbs *cobrir* (to cover), *descobrir* (to discover/to find out), *engolir* (to swallow) and *tossir* (to cough) follow the model of *dormir*.

Portuguese	English
Durma bem!	Sleep **well**!
Ele **está dormindo** ainda.	He **is** still **sleeping**.
Eu **durmo** cedo durante a semana.	I **go to bed** early during the week.

3.15. Verbs ending in ir (u preceding ending) - spelling change from u to o

infinitive: subir (to climb)	pres.participle: subindo	past participle: subido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu subo	estou subindo	estava subindo
você/ele/ela *sobe*	está subindo	estava subindo
nós subimos	estamos subindo	estávamos subindo
vocês/eles/elas *sobem*	estão subindo	estavam subindo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou subir	subi	subia
vai subir	subiu	subia
vamos subir	subimos	subíamos
vão subir	subiram	subiam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho subido	subirei	subiria
tem subido	subirá	subiria
temos subido	subiremos	subiríamos
têm subido	subirão	subiriam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha subido	terei subido	teria subido
tinha subido	terá subido	teria subido
tínhamos subido	teremos subido	teríamos subido
tinham subido	terão subido	teriam subido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
suba	subisse	subir
suba	subisse	subir
subamos	subíssemos	subirmos
subam	subissem	subirem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja subindo	estivesse subindo	estiver subindo
esteja subindo	estivesse subindo	estiver subindo
estejamos subindo	estivéssemos subindo	estivermos subindo
estejam subindo	estivessem subindo	estiverem subindo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha subido	tivesse subido	tiver subido
tenha subido	tivesse subido	tiver subido
tenhamos subido	tivéssemos subido	tivermos subido
tenham subido	tivessem subido	tiverem subido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
	subir	ter subido
(você) *sobe*/suba	subir	ter subido
	subirmos	termos subido
(vocês) subam	subirem	terem subido

Remark: Verbs *consumir* (to consume), *cuspir* (to spit), *fugir* (to flee) and *sumir* (to disappear) follow the model of *subir*. *Assumir* (to assume) is an exception and it follows the model of the regular verb *assistir* (to watch). *Fugir* (to flee) has two spelling changes.

Portuguese	English
O dólar **subiu** de novo.	The dollar **went up** again.
Ele **sumiu**.	He **disappeared**.

4. MODEL OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB

infinitive: chover (to rain)	pres.participle: chovendo	past participle: chovido
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
chove	está chovendo	estava chovendo
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vai chover	choveu	chovia
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tem chovido	choverá	choveria
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha chovido	terá chovido	teria chovido
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
chova	chovesse	chover
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja chovendo	estivesse chovendo	estiver chovendo
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha chovido	tivesse chovido	tiver chovido
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
chove/chova	chover	ter chovido

Portuguese	English
Acho que **vai chover**.	I think **it is going to rain**.
Choveu a noite inteira.	It **rained** the whole night.
Se **chover**, nós não vamos sair.	If **it rains**, we are not going out.

5. MODEL OF A REFLEXIVE VERB

infinitive: sentar-se (to sit)	pres.participle: sentando	past participle: sentado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
eu me sento	estou me sentando	estava me sentando
você/ele/ela se senta	está se sentando	estava se sentando
nós nos sentamos	estamos nos sentando	estávamos nos sentando
vocês/eles/elas se sentam	estão se sentando	estavam se sentando
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou me sentar	eu me sentei	eu me sentava
vai se sentar	você/ele se sentou	você/ele se sentava
vamos nos sentar	nós nos sentamos	nós nos sentávamos
vão se sentar	vocês/eles se sentaram	vocês/eles se sentavam
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho me sentado	eu me sentarei	eu me sentaria
tem se sentado	você/ele se sentará	você/ele se sentaria
temos nos sentado	nós nos sentaremos	nós nos sentaríamos
têm se sentado	vocês/eles se sentarão	vocês/eles se sentariam
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	tem traduzido
tinha me sentado	terei me sentado	teria me sentado
tinha se sentado	terá se sentado	teria se sentado
tínhamos nos sentado	teremos nos sentado	teríamos nos sentado
tinham se sentado	terão se sentado	teriam se sentado
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
eu me sente	eu me sentasse	eu me sentar
você/ele se sente	você/ele se sentasse	você/ele se sentar
nós nos sentemos	nós nos sentássemos	nós nos sentarmos
vocês/eles se sentem	vocês/eles se sentassem	vocês/eles se sentarem
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja me sentando	estivesse me sentando	estiver me sentando
esteja se sentando	estivesse se sentando	estiver se sentando
estejamos nos sentando	estivéssemos nos sentando	estivermos nos sentando
estejam se sentando	estivessem se sentando	estiverem se sentando
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha me sentado	tivesse me sentado	tiver me sentado
tenha se sentado	tivesse se sentado	tiver se sentado
tenhamos nos sentado	tivéssemos nos sentado	tivermos nos sentado
tenham se sentado	tivessem se sentado	tiverem se sentado
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
(você) senta/sente-se	eu me sentar	ter me sentado
	você/ele se sentar	ter se sentado
	nós nos sentarmos	termos nos sentado
(vocês) sentem-se	vocês/eles se sentarem	terem se sentado

Remark: In Brazil, the placement of the reflexive pronoun **before** the verb is common. The placement of the reflexive pronoun **after** the verb is restricted to formal written language or when the imperative is used, provided that the sentence is not negative. e.g. Sente-**se**, por favor. (Sit down, please.) – **Não se** preocupe. (Don't worry.)

Portuguese	English
Eu vou me sentar perto de você.	I will sit (myself) down near you.

6. MODEL OF A VERB USED IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

infinitive: ser examinado (to be examined)	pres.participle: sendo examinado	past participle: sido examinado
Indicativo/Indicative		
presente/simple present	**pres.contínuo/pres.cont.**	**passado contínuo/past cont.**
sou examinado/a é examinado/a somos examinados/as são examinados/as	estou sendo examinado está sendo examinado estamos sendo examinados estão sendo examinados	estava sendo examinado estava sendo examinado estávamos sendo examinados estavam sendo examinados
futuro/simple future	**perfeito simples/simple past**	**imperfeito/past imperfect**
vou ser examinado vai ser examinado vamos ser examinados vão ser examinados	fui examinado foi examinado fomos examinados foram examinados	era examinado era examinado éramos examinados eram examinados
perf.comp./pres.perf.cont.	**futuro simples/simple future**	**cond.simples/pres.cond.**
tenho sido examinado tem sido examinado temos sido examinados têm sido examinados	serei examinado será examinado seremos examinados serão examinados	seria examinado seria examinado seríamos examinados seriam examinados
mais-q/perf.comp./past perf.	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**	**cond.composto/perf.cond.**
tinha sido examinado tinha sido examinado tínhamos sido examinados tinham sido examinados	terei sido examinado terá sido examinado teremos sido examinados terão sido examinados	teria sido examinado teria sido examinado teríamos sido examinados teriam sido examinados
Subjuntivo/Subjunctive		
presente/present (que)	**imperfeito/imperfect** (se)	**fut.simples/future** (quando)
seja examinado seja examinado sejamos examinados sejam examinados	fosse examinado fosse examinado fôssemos examinados fossem examinados	for examinado for examinado formos examinados forem examinados
pres.contínuo/present cont.	**passado cont./past cont.**	**futuro contínuo/future cont.**
esteja sendo examinado esteja sendo examinado estejamos sendo examinados estejam sendo examinados	estivesse sendo examinado estivesse sendo examinado estivéssemos sendo examinados estivessem sendo examinados	estiver sendo examinado estiver sendo examinado estivermos sendo examinados estiverem sendo examinados
perfeito/pres.perfect	**mais-q/perfeito/past perfect**	**futuro composto/fut.perfect**
tenha sido examinado tenha sido examinado tenhamos sido examinados tenham sido examinados	tivesse sido examinado tivesse sido examinado tivéssemos sido examinados tivessem sido examinados	tiver sido examinado tiver sido examinado tivermos sido examinados tiverem sido examinados
Imperativo/Imperative	**Infinitivo Pessoal/Personal Infinitive (simple/perfect)**	
seja examinado sejam examinados	ser examinado ser examinado sermos examinados serem examinados	ter sido examinado ter sido examinado termos sido examinados terem sido examinados

Remark: In Portuguese, past participles vary in gender (examinado/examinada) and in number (examinados/examinadas) in the passive voice.

Portuguese	English
Eu **fui examinado** pelo médico.	I **was examined** by the doctor.
Ela **está sendo examinada**.	She **is being examined**.

CHAPTER IV – LIST OF PORTUGUESE VERBS

In this chapter you will find a list of regular, irregular and reflexive verbs frequently used in spoken and written language. The verbs are divided into categories according to their special characteristics and endings. Endings are very important as they indicate to which group a verb belongs. Once you know the endings of frequently used Portuguese verbs, you can immediately classify them as regular or irregular and use them correctly. Most verbs are regular and easy to learn. Some verbs are classified as irregular, but they only have a minor spelling change. A few verbs are really irregular and have to be practiced until they come naturally. It is worthwhile investing time studying the verbs early on followed by revision when required.

Remarks:

- If a verb requires a preposition it is shown in the list below.
- Pick out the verbs that you know you will use often and practice them.
- Only a few verbal idioms are listed here because they are numerous (over 4000) and have to be studied separately.
- Rarely used verbs are not listed.
- If you cannot find a verb, look it up in a dictionary.

1. REGULAR VERBS

1.1. Verbs ending in ar

In Portuguese, verbs ending in **ar** are the most numerous and common. You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ar** on **page 147**.

Portuguese	English
A	
abaixar	to lower, to stoop, to duck
abandonar	to leave, to abandon
abortar	to have an abortion/a miscarriage
acabar	to finish, to end
acabar de + infinitive	to have just done something
acampar	to camp
aceitar	to accept
acelerar	to accelerate, to speed up
achar (de/do/da)	to find, to think (of)
acompanhar	to accompany
aconselhar	to advise
acordar	to wake up
acreditar (em/no/na)	to believe
acrescentar	to add
acusar	to accuse

Portuguese	English
A	
adiantar	to advance, to put forward
adicionar	to add, to sum
adivinhar	to guess
administrar	to manage, to administer
admirar	to admire
adorar	to like very much, to love, to adore
adotar	to adopt
afetar	to affect
afirmar	to affirm
afundar	to sink
agitar	to shake
aguardar	to wait
agüentar	to stand, to put up
ajudar	to help
amamentar	to breast feed, to nurse
amar	to love
amarrar	to tie
amassar	to knead, to crease
analisar	to analyze
andar (de, a, com)	to go, to walk, to ride, to fly, to be
animar	to cheer up
anotar	to write down
apertar	to press, to tighten, to squeeze
apoiar	to support
apontar	to point out, to sharpen
apostar (em/no/na)	to bet
apresentar (a/ao/à, para/para o/para a)	to introduce (to)
aprovar	to approve
aproveitar	to enjoy, to have a good time
arquivar (em/no/na)	to file
arranjar	to arrange, to find
arrumar	to tidy up, to arrange, to find, to fix
arrumar as malas	to pack
assaltar	to rob, to mug
assar	to bake, to roast
assinar	to sign, to subscribe
assustar	to frighten
aterrissar	to land
atirar (em/no/na)	to shoot, to throw
atrapalhar	to disturb, to bother
atrasar	to delay
atravessar	to cross
atropelar	to run over
atualizar	to update

Portuguese	English
A	
aumentar	to enlarge, to increase
avisar	to warn, to inform
azedar	to turn sour
B	
baixar	to lower, to fall, to drop
barrar	to bar
batizar	to baptize
beijar	to kiss
bocejar	to yawn
boiar	to float
bordar	to embroider
botar	to put, to lay (egg)
brindar	to toast
buzinar	to sound the horn
C	
cadastrar	to register
calcular	to calculate
caminhar	to walk
cancelar	to cancel
cantar	to sing
casar (com)	to marry, to get married
causar	to cause
cavar	to dig
chamar	to call
cheirar (a)	to smell
chorar	to cry
chupar (sorvete/laranja)	to eat (ice cream/orange), to suck
chutar	to kick
cicatrizar	to heal
circular	to circulate
citar	to cite, to quote
cobrar (por/pelo/pela)	to charge
colaborar (com)	to collaborate
colar	to glue
colecionar	to collect
combinar (com)	to match, to agree, to get on well
comemorar	to celebrate
comentar (com, sobre)	to comment
comparar (com)	to compare
completar	to complete
comprar (por, para)	to buy (for)
comprovar	to prove
concordar (com)	to agree

Portuguese	English
C	
confirmar	to confirm
congelar	to freeze
conquistar	to conquer
consertar	to repair, to mend
conservar	to preserve, to keep, to maintain
considerar	to consider
consultar	to consult
contaminar	to contaminate, to infect
contar (a/ao/à, para/para o/para a)	to count, to tell
contatar	to contact
continuar (a + infinitive)	to continue
contratar	to contract, to hire
controlar	to control
conversar (com, sobre)	to talk (with/about)
convidar (para)	to invite (for)
cooperar (com)	to cooperate
cortar	to cut, to chop
costurar	to sew
cozinhar	to cook
cuidar (de/do/da)	to take care, to care
cumprimentar	to greet
custar	to cost
D	
datilografar	to type
declarar	to declare
decolar	to take off
decorar	to decorate
deitar	to lay down
deixar	to leave, to let, to allow
deixar (de + infinitivo)	to stop doing something
deixar recado	to leave a message
demonstrar	to demonstrate
demorar (para + infinitivo)	to take (a long time), to last
depilar (a perna)	to shave (one's leg)
depositar (em/no/na)	to deposit
derramar (em/no/na)	to spill
derrubar (em/no/na)	to drop
desanimar	to be discouraging
desarrumar	to mess up
descansar	to rest, to take a rest
descongelar	to thaw out, to defrost
desejar	to wish, to desire
desembrulhar	to unpack
desempacotar	to unpack

Portuguese	English
D	
desenhar	to draw
desfilar	to parade
desmaiar	to faint
desmontar	to take to pieces, to dismount
desocupar	to vacate, to empty
detestar	to hate
dificultar	to make it difficult
disputar	to dispute, to compete
ditar	to dictate
dobrar	to fold, to bend
durar	to last
duvidar (de/do/da)	to doubt
E	
economizar	to save
embolsar	to pocket
embrulhar	to pack
empacotar	to pack
emprestar	to lend
empurrar	to push
encomendar	to order
encontrar	to find, to meet
encurtar	to shorten
enfrentar	to face
enganar	to cheat
engatinhar	to crawl
engessar	to bandage
engordar	to get fat, to put on weight
engravidar	to get pregnant
enrolar	to roll
ensinar	to teach
enterrar	to bury
entrar (em/no/na)	to enter, to come in
entrevistar	to interview
errar	to make a mistake
escapar	to escape
escovar (os dentes/o cabelo/o sapato)	to brush (one's teeth, hair, shoes)
escutar	to hear, to listen
espalhar	to spread
esperar	to wait, to hope
espirrar	to sneeze
esquentar	to heat, to warm up, to get warm
estacionar	to park, to stagnate
estourar	to burst
estudar	to study, to go to school

Portuguese	English
E	
evitar	to avoid
exagerar	to exaggerate
examinar	to examine
experimentar	to try, to try on, to taste
explorar	to exploit, to explore
exportar	to export
expressar	to express
F	
facilitar	to facilitate
falar (com, em/no/na, de/do/da)	to speak, to tell, to say, to talk
falar a verdade	to tell the truth
faltar	to miss, to skip
fechar	to close
filmar	to film
fiscalizar	to inspect
formar	to form
forrar	to line
fotografar	to photograph, to take pictures
frisar	to stress, to emphasize
fritar	to fry
fumar	to smoke
funcionar	to function, to work, to run
furar	to perforate, to pierce
G	
ganhar	to earn, to win, to gain, to receive
gastar	to spend
gostar (de/do/da)	to like, to enjoy
gravar	to record, to engrave
grelhar	to grill
gritar (com)	to scream, to shout, to yell (at)
guardar (para/para o/para a)	to put away, to put aside, to guard
H	
herdar	to inherit
hesitar	to hesitate
I	
imaginar	to imagine
imitar	to imitate
importar	to import
impressionar	to impress
improvisar	to improvise
inaugurar	to inaugurate
inchar	to swell
incomodar	to disturb, to bother

Portuguese	English
I	
informar	to inform
instalar	to install
inventar	to invent, to make up
irritar	to irritate
J	
jantar	to have dinner
L	
lamentar	to lament, to be sorry
lavar	to wash
lecionar	to teach
lembrar (de/do/da)	to remember, to remind
levantar	to lift, to get up, to raise
levar (a/ao/à – para/para o/ para a)	to take (to)
limpar	to clean, to cleanse
lutar (por/pelo/pela, com)	to fight (for/with)
M	
maltratar	to treat badly, to mistreat
mandar (para/a)	to send, to give order
mandar embora	to fire, to lay off
mandar fazer	to have something made/done
matar	to kill
melhorar	to improve, to get better
mencionar	to mention
misturar	to mix
molhar	to wet
montar	to put together, to ride
morar (em/no/na, com)	to live
mostrar	to show
movimentar	to move
mudar (de casa/de roupa, etc.)	to move, to change (house/clothes)
N	
nadar	to swim
necessitar (de/do/da)	to need
nevar	to snow
notar	to notice, to perceive
O	
observar	to observe
olhar (para/para o/para a)	to check, to look (at)
operar	to operate
optar (por/pelo/pela)	to opt
orar	to pray
organizar	to organize
orientar	to guide

Portuguese	English
P	
parar (de + infinitive, com, em/no/na)	to stop
participar (de/do/da)	to participate
passar (em/no/na, por/pelo/pela)	to pass, to hand, to apply
passar roupas	to iron
patinar	to skate
patrocinar	to sponsor
pendurar (em/no/na)	to hang
pensar (em/no/na)	to think
perguntar (por, para)	to ask (after)
pesar	to weigh
pesquisar	to research, to investigate
pintar	to paint, to color
piorar	to get worse
pisar (em/no/na)	to step (on)
planejar	to plan
plantar	to plant
poupar	to save, to spare
precisar (de/do/da)	to have to, must, to need,
preparar	to prepare, to fix
procurar	to look for, to try
provar	to prove, to taste, to try on
pular	to jump, to skip
puxar	to pull
Q	
quebrar	to break, to break down
queimar	to burn
R	
raspar	to shave
realizar	to happen, to do, to make
reclamar (de/do/da)	to claim, to complain
recomendar	to recommend
recuperar	to recuperate, to recover
recusar	to refuse
reembolsar	to reimburse
reformar	to reform, to renovate
registrar	to register
rejeitar	to reject
relampejar	to flash
renovar	to renew, to renovate
reparar	to notice
reservar	to reserve, to book
respeitar	to respect
respirar	to breathe

Portuguese	English
R	
revelar	to reveal, to develop (photos)
revisar	to revise
rezar	to pray
rodar	to turn, to spin, to drive around
roubar	to steal, to rob
S	
saltar	to jump
salvar	to save
sangrar	to bleed
sarar	to heal
segurar	to hold, to grip
selar	to stamp, to seal
selecionar	to select, to choose
separar	to separate
soletrar	to spell
solicitar	to ask
soltar	to free, to loosen
somar	to add up, to sum
sonhar (com)	to dream
suar	to sweat
sujar	to dirty
suportar	to stand, to put up
T	
telefonar (para/para o/para a)	to call
tentar	to try
terminar (de + infinitive)	to finish
tirar (de/do/da)	to take away/out/off
tirar cópia	to make a copy
tirar férias	to take vacation
tirar foto (de/do/da)	to take a photo/picture
tomar	to drink, to take
tomar banho	to take a bath/shower
tomar café	to have breakfast, to drink coffee
trabalhar (em/no/na, com)	to work (at/with)
transpirar	to perspire
transportar	to transport
tratar	to treat
U	
usar	to use
V	
vaiar	to boo
vazar	to leak
ventar	to be windy

Portuguese	English
V	
viajar (para/para o/para a, a/ao/à, de)	to travel (to/by)
virar (a/para)	to turn
visitar	to visit
voltar (de/do/da, para/para o/para a)	to come/go back, to return (from/to)
vomitar	to vomit
votar (em/no/na)	to vote

Remark: Verbs *apoiar* (to support) and *boiar* (to float) are regular, but there is an acute accent on letter **o** (simple present: apóio/apóia/apoiamos/apóiam; present subjunctive: apóie/apóie/apoiemos/apóiem; imperative: apóie/apóiem).
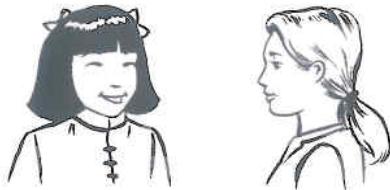
Nós vamos viajar de carro.
We are going to travel by car.

1.2. Verbs ending in iar

Most verbs ending in **iar** like *pronunciar* (to pronounce) are regular (pronuncio/ pronuncia/pronunciamos/pronunciam) and they follow the model of *falar* (to speak), on page 147, except for *odiar* (to hate) and a few rarely used verbs.

Portuguese	English
A	
abreviar	to shorten, to abbreviate
adiar (para)	to postpone
ampliar	to enlarge
anunciar	to announce
apreciar	to appreciate
assobiar	to whistle
auxiliar	to help
avaliar	to evaluate
C	
confiar (em/no/na)	to trust, to rely
contagiar	to contaminate, to infect
copiar	to copy
criar	to create, to bring up, to raise
D	
denunciar	to denounce
desconfiar (de/do/da)	to be suspicious
diferenciar	to differentiate

Portuguese	English
E	
enviar (para/para o/para a – a/ao/à)	to send
esfriar	to cool down, to get cold
esquiar	to ski
esvaziar	to empty
Portuguese	**English**
F	
financiar	to finance
I	
influenciar	to influence
iniciar	to begin
N	
negociar	to negotiate
P	
presenciar	to be present, to witness
pronunciar	to pronounce
providenciar	to arrange
R	
renunciar (a/ao/à)	to resign, to give up
V	
variar	to vary

Como você pronuncia esta palavra?
How do you pronounce this word?

1.3. Verbs ending in oar

There are only a few verbs ending in oar. Verbs ending in oar are regular and they follow the model of *falar* (to speak), on page 47, but note that there is a circumflex accent in the first person of singular. Example: Eu perdôo.

Portuguese	English
abençoar	to bless
abotoar	to button
desabotoar	to unbutton
doar	to donate
perdoar	to forgive
voar	to fly

1.4. Verbs ending in er

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **er** on **page 148**.

Portuguese	English
A	
acender	to turn on, to light
aprender (a + infinitivo)	to learn (something new)
arder	to burn
atender ao telefone	to answer the phone
atender à porta	to open the door
atender alguém	to take care of someone
B	
bater (em/no/na, com)	to hit, to beat, to knock
bater palmas	to clap one's hands
beber	to drink
C	
chover	to rain
combater	to fight, to combat
comer	to eat
cometer (erros)	to commit, to make (mistakes)
compreender	to understand, to comprehend
converter	to convert
correr	to run, to hurry
corresponder (a/ao/à)	to correspond (to)
D	
defender	to defend
depender (de/do/da)	to depend (on)
derreter	to melt
descrever	to describe
desenvolver	to develop
dever	to owe, must, should
devolver (para/para o/para a)	to return, to give back
E	
encher	to fill, to fill up, to blow up
encolher	to shrink
entender	to understand
escolher	to choose, to select
esconder (de/do/da, em/no/na)	to hide
escorrer	to run, to drain
escrever (para/para o/para a, a/ao/à)	to write (to)
F	
ferver	to boil
I	
interromper	to interrupt
inverter	to invert, to reverse

Portuguese	English
L	
lamber	to lick
M	
mexer	to stir, to touch
morder	to bite
morrer (de + infinitive/noun)	to die (of)
O	
ocorrer	to occur, to happen
ofender	to offend
P	
perceber	to notice
percorrer	to travel, to ride
preencher	to fill in, to fill out
prender	to tie, to arrest
pretender	to intend
prometer	to promise
promover	to promote
R	
receber	to receive
remover	to remove
resolver	to solve, to decide
responder	to answer, to reply
S	
suspender	to suspend
T	
tremer	to shiver, to tremble
V	
varrer	to sweep
vender	to sell
viver (em/no/na, com, de)	to live
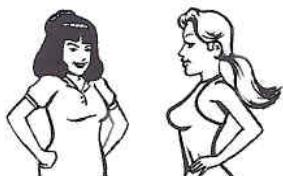
Vocês entenderam o que eu quero dizer?
Did you understand what I mean?

1.5. Verbs ending in ir

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ir** on **page 149**.

Portuguese	English
A	
abrir	to open
admitir	to admit
aplaudir	to applaud
assistir (a/ao/à)	to watch, to see
assumir	to take over, to assume
C	
confundir (com)	to confuse
consistir (em)	to consist (of)
cumprir	to carry out
D	
decidir	to decide
demitir	to sack, to fire
desistir (de/do/da)	to give up
discutir (com, sobre)	to discuss, to argue
dividir (com, em)	to divide, to share
E	
emitir	to issue
existir	to exist
G	
garantir	to guarantee
I	
imprimir	to print
insistir (para, em)	to insist
invadir	to invade
L	
latir	to bark
P	
partir (de/do/da)	to leave, to break
permitir	to allow, to let
proibir	to prohibit
R	
resistir (a/ao/à)	to resist
resumir	to summarize
reunir	to bring together

Por que elas estão discutindo?
Why are they quarrelling?

2. IRREGULAR VERBS

2.1. Verbs ending in ar

Remark: Page numbers refer to the page where you can easily find the model conjugation for that verb.

Portuguese	English	Page
dar	to give	150
estar (em/no/na + place)	to be (temporary)	151

2.2. Verbs ending in er

Portuguese	English	Page
caber (em/no/na)	to fit in	152
conter	to contain	163
crer (em/no/na)	to believe	156
dizer	to say, to tell, to speak	153
doer	to hurt	157
fazer	to make, to do	154
haver (há)	there is/are	155
ler	to read	156
manter	to maintain	163
moer	to grind, to mince	157
obter	to obtain	163
perder	to lose, to miss, to waste	158
poder	to be able, can	159
prever	to foresee, to predict	166
querer	to want	160
refazer	to remake, to do again	154
rever	to watch again, to see again	166
roer	to gnaw	157
saber	to know, can = know how to	161
satisfazer	to satisfy	154
ser	to be (permanent)	162
ter (que/de)	to have, to have to, must	163
trazer	to bring	164
valer	to be worthwhile	165
ver	to watch, to see	166

Remark: Verbs *conter* (to contain), *manter* (to maintain) and *obter* (to obtain) follow the model of *ter* (to have). Verb *crer* follows the model of *ler* (to read). Verbs *prever* (to foresee) and *rever* (to see again) follow the model of *ver* (to see). Verb *refazer* (to remake) follows the model of *fazer* (to make).

2.3. Verbs ending in ir

Portuguese	English	Page
atrair	to attract	173
cair (em/no/na)	to fall, to fall off	173
concluir	to conclude	167
construir	to build	168
contrair	to contract	173
contribuir (com)	to contribute	167
convir	to suit	175
despedir	to fire, to lay off	171
destruir	to destroy	168
diminuir	to reduce, to diminish	167
distribuir	to distribute	167
excluir	to exclude	167
impedir	to hinder	171
incluir	to include	167
influir	to influence	167
instruir	to instruct	167
introduzir	to introduce	174
ir (a/ao/à)	to go, to fly, to walk, to visit	169
medir	to measure	171
obstruir	to obstruct	167
ouvir	to hear, to listen	170
pedir	to order	171
pedir emprestado/a	to borrow	171
poluir	to pollute	167
possuir	to own	167
produzir	to produce	174
reconstruir	to reconstruct, to rebuild	168
reduzir	to reduce	174
reproduzir	to reproduce	174
retribuir	to return	167
rir	to laugh	172
sair (de/do/da, com)	to leave, to go out, to go, to depart	173
sair de férias	to go on holiday	173
sorrir	to smile	172
substituir	to substitute	167
traduzir (para/para o/para a)	to translate (into/for)	174
vir	to come	175

Remark: Verb *convir* (to suit) follows the model of *vir* (to come); verb *sorrir* (to smile) follows the model of *rir* (to laugh) and verbs *instruir* (to instruct) and *obstruir* (to obstruct) follow the model of *concluir* (to conclude).

2.4. Verbs ending in por

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **or** on **page 176**.

Portuguese	English
compor	to compose
expor	to expose, to display
impor	to impose
pôr	to put
propor	to propose
supor	to suppose

Onde você pôs meu guarda-chuva?
Where did you put my umbrella?

3. IRREGULAR VERBS WITH MINOR SPELLING CHANGES

3.1. Verbs ending in car

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **car** on **page 177**.

Portuguese	English
aplicar (creme/injeção em/no/na)	to put on (cream), give (injection)
arrancar	to pull out
arriscar	to risk
atacar	to attack
brecar	to brake
brincar (com/de)	to play, to joke
buscar	to pick up, to fetch
checar	to check
chuviscar	to drizzle
classificar	to classify
colocar (em/no/na)	to put
complicar	to complicate
comunicar	to communicate
criticar	to criticize
descascar	to peel

Portuguese	English
discar	to dial
educar	to educate, to bring up
embarcar	to go on board
explicar (para/para o/para a, a/ao/à)	to explain
falsificar	to falsify
ficar (em/no/na)	to stay, to get, to become, to be located
identificar	to identify
implicar (com alguém)	to tease, to pick on (someone)
indicar	to indicate
justificar	to justify
machucar	to hurt, to injure
marcar	to mark
marcar hora/consulta	to make an appointment
pescar	to fish
praticar	to practice
prejudicar	to harm
provocar	to provoke, to cause
publicar	to publish
riscar	to mark, to cross out, to outline
roncar	to snore
secar	to dry, drain
simplificar	to simplify
tocar	to ring, play (instrument)
trancar	to lock
trocar (de/por)	to change, to exchange
verificar	to check

As crianças estão brincado lá fora.
The kids are playing outside.

3.2. Verbs ending in gar

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **gar** on **page 178**.

Portuguese	English
afogar	to drown
alegar	to allege, to plead
alugar	to rent, to hire
apagar	to turn off, to blow/put out, to erase
brigar (com)	to fight
carregar	to carry, to load
chegar (a/ao/à, em/no/na)	to arrive
descarregar	to unload
desligar	to turn off, to disconnect
empregar	to employ
engasgar	to choke
entregar	to deliver, to give, to hand over
enxergar	to see
escorregar	to slide, to slip
esfregar	to rub, to scrub
estragar	to spoil
jogar	to throw, to play (games)
jogar fora, jogar no lixo	to throw away
julgar	to judge
largar	to abandon
ligar (para/para o/para a)	to turn on, to connect, to call
negar	to deny
obrigar (a + infinitive)	to oblige
pagar (por/pelo/pela)	to pay
pegar	to take, to fetch, to catch
pregar	to nail, to pin, to preach
prorrogar	to extend
rasgar	to tear
regar	to water
tragar	to inhale
vingar	to revenge
xingar	to swear at, to curse, to call names

Ele ainda não me ligou.
He has not called me yet.

3.3. Verbs ending in çar

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **çar** on **page 179**.

Portuguese	English
abraçar	to hug
adoçar	to sweeten
alcançar	to reach, to catch up
almoçar	to have lunch
ameaçar	to threaten
balançar	to shake, to swing
caçar	to hunt
calçar	to put on (shoes)
coçar	to scratch, to itch
começar (a + infinitive)	to begin, to start
dançar	to dance
desembaraçar	to untangle
forçar (a)	to force
reforçar	to reinforce
tropeçar (em/no/na)	to stumble

Acabei de almoçar.
I have just had lunch.

3.4. Verbs ending in cer

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **cer** on **page 180**.

Portuguese	English
abastecer	to supply, to fill up
aborrecer	to annoy
acontecer	to happen
adoecer	to get sick
agradecer	to thank (for)
amanhecer	to dawn
anoitecer	to get dark
aparecer	to show up, to attract attention
aquecer	to heat, to warm up
comparecer	to appear, to show up
conhecer	to know
convencer	to convince
crescer	to grow, go up
desaparecer	to disappear
descer (de/do/da)	to go down, to come down, to get off
desobedecer	to disobey
emagrecer	to slim down
enriquecer	to get rich
entristecer	to sadden
envelhecer	to get old
esclarecer	to clarify
escurecer	to get dark
esquecer (de/do/da)	to forget
estabelecer	to establish
exercer	to perform
falecer	to die
fornecer	to supply
merecer	to deserve
obedecer	to obey
oferecer	to offer
parecer	to seem
permanecer	to stay, to remain
pertencer (a/ao/à)	to belong
reconhecer	to recognize
rejuvenescer	to rejuvenate
vencer	to be due, to win, to expire
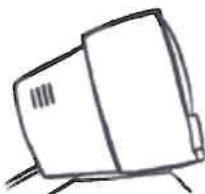
Quando eu crescer, eu quero ser professora.
When I grow up, I want to be a teacher.

3.5. Verbs ending in ger

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ger** on **page 181**.

Portuguese	English
abranger	to cover, to reach
proteger	to protect

Proteja a sua senha!
Protect your password!

3.6. Verbs ending in gir

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **gir** on **page 182**.

Portuguese	English
agir	to act
atingir	to reach, to hit
corrigir	to correct
dirigir	to drive, to manage
exigir	to demand
fingir	to pretend
reagir	to react
redigir	to write
surgir	to appear, to arise
tingir	to dye

Remark: Verb *fugir* (to flee) is an exception. It follows the model of the verb *subir* (to climb). See page 191.

Ela não sabe dirigir.
She doesn't know how to drive.

3.7. Verbs ending in guar

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **guar** on **page 183**.

Portuguese	English
aguar	to water
enxaguar	to rinse

Ele está aguando as plantas.
He is watering the plants.

3.8. Verbs ending in guer

You can find a **model conjugation** of verb **erguer** on **page 184**.

Portuguese	English
erguer	to lift, to raise

3.9. Verbs ending in guir

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **guir** on **page 185**.

Portuguese	English
conseguir	to be able, to manage, to get
distinguir	to distinguish
extinguir	to extinguish
perseguir	to pursue
prosseguir	to continue
seguir	to follow

Remark: Verbs ending in **eguir** have two spelling changes: from **gu** to **g** (consigo) and from **e** to **i** (consigo).

Eu não consigo fazer este exercício.
I cannot do this exercise.

3.10. Verbs ending in gredir

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **gredir** on **page 186**.

Portuguese	English
agredir	to attack, to assault
progredir	to progress
regredir	to regress

Remark: Verb *prevenir* (to prevent) follows the model of verbs ending in **gredir**.

3.11. Verbs ending in ear

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ear** on **page 187**.

Portuguese	English
chatear	to bother, to upset
clarear	to dawn
folhear	to leaf through
grampear	to staple
homenagear	to honor
mapear	to map
nomear	to name
passear	to take a walk, to go out, to go on a tour
pentear	to comb
recear	to fear
rechear	to fill, to stuff
saborear	to taste
semear	to sow
sortear	to draw lots for, to raffle

Eu gosto de passear de manhã.
I like to go for a walk in the morning.

3.12. Verbs ending in iar

You can find a **model conjugation of** verb *odiar* on **page 188**.

Portuguese	English
odiar	to hate

Remark: There are only a few rarely used verbs ending in **iar**, which follow the model of *odiar*. Most verbs ending in **iar** are regular and follow the model of *falar* (to speak). See page 147.
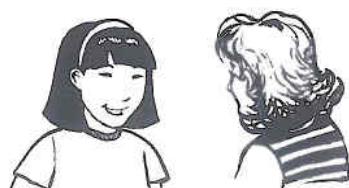
Eu odeio levantar cedo.
I hate getting up early.

3.13. Verbs ending in ir (e preceding ending)

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ir** on **page 189**.

Portuguese	English
competir	to compete
conferir	to check
ferir	to hurt, to injure
interferir	to interfere
investir	to invest
mentir (para)	to lie
preferir (a/ao/à)	to prefer (to)
refletir	to reflect, to think over
repetir	to repeat
sentir	to feel
servir	to serve, to fit
sugerir	to suggest
transferir	to transfer
vestir	to dress, to put on

Remark: Verb *prevenir* (to prevent) follows the model of *progredir*. See page 186.

Você pode repetir o que ele falou?
Can you repeat what he said?

3.14. Verbs ending in ir (o preceding ending)

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ir** on **page 190**.

Portuguese	English
cobrir	to cover
descobrir	to discover, to find out
dormir	to sleep
engolir	to swallow
tossir	to cough

Ele ainda está dormindo.
He is still sleeping.

3.15. Verbs ending in ir (u preceding ending)

You can find a **model conjugation** of verbs ending in **ir** on **page 191**.

Portuguese	English
consumir	to consume
cuspir	to spit
fugir	to flee
subir (em/no/na)	to go/come up, to climb
sumir	to disappear

Remark: Verb *fugir* (to flee) has two spelling changes: from **g** to **j** (fujo) and from **u** to **o** (foge/fogem).

O dólar subiu de novo.
The dollar went up again.

4. REFLEXIVE VERBS

Remember that reflexive verbs in Portuguese are not always reflexive in English. The reflexive verbs are arranged in alphabetical order regardless of whether they are regular or irregular. Note that most reflexive verbs are regular. You can find a **model conjugation** of a reflexive verb on **page 193**.

Remark: Page numbers refer to the page where you can easily find the model conjugation for that verb.

Portuguese	English	Page
A		
abaixar-se	to lower, to stoop, to duck	147
abraçar-se	to hug	179
acostumar-se (com/a)	to get used (to)	147
adaptar-se (a/com)	to adapt (oneself)	147
afobar-se	to panic	147
amar-se	to love	147
animar-se	to cheer up	147
apaixonar-se (por/pelo/pela)	to fall in love (with)	147
aposentar-se	to retire	147
apresentar-se (a/para)	to introduce (to)	147
apressar-se	to hurry	147
aproveitar-se (de/do/da)	to take advantage (of)	147
aproximar-se (de/do/da)	to approach	147
arrepender-se (de)	to regret	148
arriscar-se	to risk	177
arrumar-se	to dress up	147
assustar-se (com)	to frighten	147
atrasar-se	to be late	147
B		
barbear-se	to shave	187
beijar-se	to kiss	147
C		
candidatar-se (a/ao/à)	to apply (for), to run (for)	147
cansar-se (de)	to get/become tired (of)	147
casar-se (com)	to get married	147
chamar-se	to be called	147
comportar-se	to behave	147
comunicar-se (com)	to communicate	177
concentrar-se (em/no/na)	to concentrate (on)	147
conhecer-se	to know, to meet	180
conter-se (irregular)	to restrain	163
corresponder-se (com)	to write to each other	148
D		
dar-se (com) (irregular)	to get along with	150
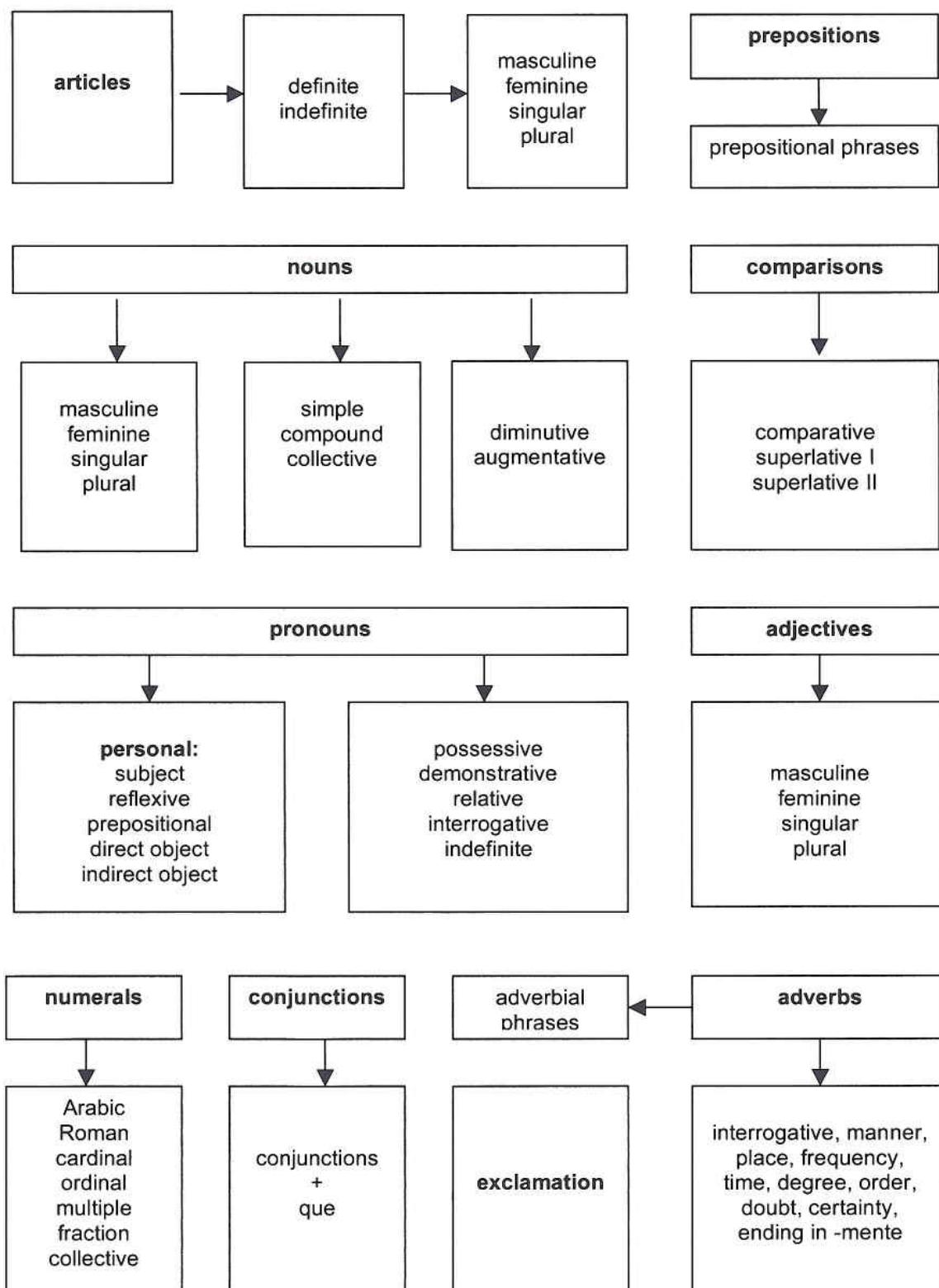
Portuguese	English	Page
dedicar-se (a/ao/à)	to dedicate	177
deitar-se	to lay down	147
demitir-se (de/do/da)	to resign (oneself)	149
descontrair-se	to relax	173
desculpar-se (por/pelo/pela)	to excuse (oneself), to apologize	147
desligar-se (de/do/da)	to turn one's back to something	178
despedir-se (de/do/da)	to say goodbye	171
dirigir-se (a/ao/à)	to go (to)	182
distrair-se	to distract, to amuse (oneself)	173
divertir-se	to enjoy oneself, to have a good time	189
divorciar-se	to divorce, to get a divorce	147
E		
encontrar-se (com)	to meet	147
enganar-se	to be wrong/mistaken	147
engasgar-se	to choke (oneself)	178
enjoar-se (de/do/da)	to be fed up, to get sick (of)	147
entender-se (com)	to get along with	148
entregar-se	to give oneself up, to surrender	178
entusiasmar-se (com)	to get excited	147
enxugar-se	to dry oneself	178
esconder-se (de)	to hide (oneself)	148
esforçar-se	to try hard, to force (oneself)	179
esquecer-se (de/do/da)	to forget	180
F		
fazer-se (de) (irregular)	to pretend to be	154
H		
hospedar-se (em/no/na)	to stay (in a hotel/friend's house)	147
I		
importar-se (de/com)	to mind	147
inscrever-se	to sign (oneself) up (for a course)	148
interessar-se (por/pelo/pela)	to have interest (in)	147
intrometer-se (em/no/na)	to interfere	148
irritar-se (com)	to get/become irritated	147
L		
lembrar-se (de)	to remember	147
levantar-se	to get (oneself) up	147
M		
machucar-se	to hurt (oneself), to injure	177
matricular-se (em/no/na)	to enroll, to register (oneself)	147
mexer-se	to move (oneself)	148
P		
parecer-se (com)	to be similar, to look like	180
preocupar-se (com)	to be worried	147

Portuguese	English	Page
preparar-se (para)	to prepare (oneself)	147
Q		
queixar-se (de/do/da)	to complain	147
R		
recuperar-se (de/do/da)	to recuperate, to recover	147
recusar-se (a + infinitive)	to refuse (to)	147
referir-se (a/ao/à)	to refer (to)	189
responsabilizar-se (por/pelo/pela)	to take responsibility (for)	147
retirar-se (de/do/da)	to leave, to take one's leave	147
S		
secar-se	to dry (oneself)	177
sentar-se	to sit (oneself) down	147
sentir-se	to feel (oneself)	189
separar-se (de/do/da)	to separate (oneself)	147
servir-se	to help one's self	189
submeter-se (a/ao/à)	to submit (oneself)	148
sujeitar-se (a/ao/à)	to subject (oneself)	147
surpreender-se	to be surprised	148
T		
transformar-se (em/no/na)	to transform (oneself), to turn	147
tratar-se (de)	to be about	147
V		
vestir-se	to dress (oneself), to put on	189
vingar-se (de/do/da)	to revenge	178
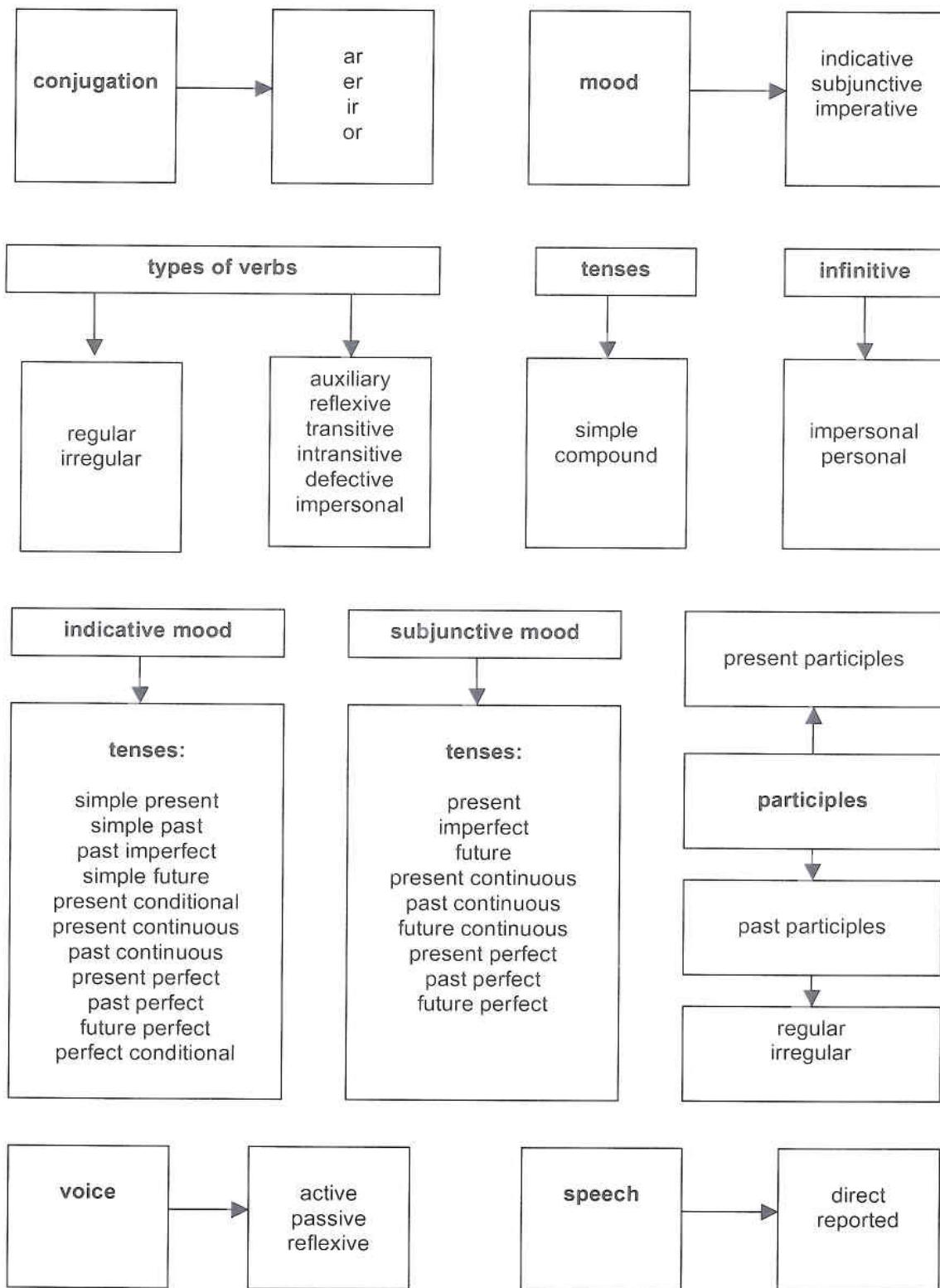
Ele está se despedindo do pessoal.
He is saying goodbye to everybody.

Appendix 1 - Mind Map - Portuguese Grammar

articles	→	definite indefinite	→	masculine feminine singular plural

prepositions

prepositional phrases

---

nouns

masculine feminine singular plural	simple compound collective	diminutive augmentative

comparisons

comparative
superlative I
superlative II

---

pronouns

personal: subject reflexive prepositional direct object indirect object	possessive demonstrative relative interrogative indefinite

adjectives

masculine
feminine
singular
plural

---

numerals	**conjunctions**	adverbial phrases	←	**adverbs**

Arabic Roman cardinal ordinal multiple fraction collective	conjunctions + que	**exclamation**	interrogative, manner, place, frequency, time, degree, order, doubt, certainty, ending in -mente

224

Appendix 2 - Mind Map - Portuguese Verbs

| conjugation | → | ar
er
ir
or |

| mood | → | indicative
subjunctive
imperative |

types of verbs

↓ regular
irregular

↓ auxiliary
reflexive
transitive
intransitive
defective
impersonal

tenses

↓ simple
compound

infinitive

↓ impersonal
personal

indicative mood

↓

tenses:

simple present
simple past
past imperfect
simple future
present conditional
present continuous
past continuous
present perfect
past perfect
future perfect
perfect conditional

subjunctive mood

↓

tenses:

present
imperfect
future
present continuous
past continuous
future continuous
present perfect
past perfect
future perfect

present participles

↑

participles

↓

past participles

↓

regular
irregular

| **voice** | → | active
passive
reflexive |

| **speech** | → | direct
reported |

225

Portuguese Grammar is a complete, concise and practical grammar reference book for teachers and students of Portuguese as a second language.

Master the Portuguese language in a fast and easy way:

- concise, logical and informative
- designed for self-study
- large print for easy-reading
- short and easy-to-understand sections
- clear explanations
- examples taken from everyday conversations
- emphasis on contemporary Brazilian Portuguese speech
- table of contents designed for speedy reference
- overview of grammar and verbs in mind-map form
- illustrated with cartoons
- grammar and verbs in one book
- a complete and up-to-date guide to Portuguese grammar
- an invaluable support for any student of Portuguese
- a superb reference for teachers
- ideal if used together with Sonia's Portuguese course

About the author:

Sonia Celegatti Althoff is a native Brazilian Portuguese speaker with a Bachelor degree in Languages (Portuguese/English) and experience teaching Portuguese to foreigners for over 18 years. Her students have been of many different ages, backgrounds, nationalities and cultures.

Visit Sonia's Portuguese language website at: www.sonia-portuguese.com